教辅资料站
电子教辅　试卷练习
知识总结　备课资源
扫码关注获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

中国品牌创新发展工程
推荐品牌

教师用书

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级英语上

PEP版（人教PEP版）　三年级起点

内含 基础默写卡 名师划重点

微信扫一扫 线上学习互动

经典好题·精妙点拨

荣德基官网：你的专属课件包 你的海量资源库

综合应用创新题 典中点 五年级 英语 上 PEP版人教版 荣德基 主编 教师用书

“典中点”：一本在做题中教会你学习方法的练习册

“典中点”——做最好的自己，将优秀变成卓越，成就独特与超然，是其初心；帮老师教学、教学生方法、让家长放心，是其使命；不断创新，追求超值，获得惊喜与认可，是其动力。

当你拿到本书，“1书+1册+1卷”的三位一体结构，“知识+方法+素养”的能力训练目标，定能让你事半功倍！





1书

+



1册

+



1卷



练能力，培素养，重巩固

- 练透基础，练通题型
- 听说读写，解题有法
- 核心素养，边练边悟

抓考点，破难点，促提升

- 明确必会知识点
- 警示常考易错点
- 解决重难丢分点

模拟考，找差距，不丢分

- 实战演练，成竹在胸
- 查漏补缺，每分必争



课后作业，全班学生通用

- 与授课同步，1课1练
- 对点练习，题好题新
- 能力素养，以练代教

教学助手，辅导能手

- 必记知识梳理
- 课堂精华提炼
- 教材重点透析

摸底检测，有的放矢

- 标准试卷，高质实用
- 活页试卷，方便好用
- 单元期末，全程可用



提分有术

考试题型全覆盖，听说读写全在手

辅有依据

知识点、重难点、易错点，一目了然

心中有数

通过错题锁定差距，让分数见证进步

荣德基老师做客央视《对话新时代》栏目



扫描二维码，观看完整视频

- **主持人朱迅对荣德基老师说：**

作为家长，最希望的是能买到对的书，因为孩子的学习精力特别有限，如果对孩子是非常有帮助的教辅，我们家长都愿意递到他们手中。

十年树木，百年树人。有情怀的人才可以做“教育”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

教师用书

典中点

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书



五年级 英语 上

PEP版（人教PEP版）

微信公众号
教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

目录

Unit 1 What's he like?



课时练 1	Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	1
课时练 2	Part A Let's learn ~ Ask and answer ……	2
课时练 3	Part A Let's spell ……	3
培优练	周末主题素养练（一）……	4
课时练 4	Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	6
课时练 5	Part B Let's learn ~ Match and say ……	7
课时练 6	Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ……	8
课时练 7	Part C Story time ……	9
培优练	周末主题素养练（二）……	10

Unit 2 My week



课时练 1	Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	12
课时练 2	Part A Let's learn ~ Let's play ……	13
课时练 3	Part A Let's spell ……	14
培优练	周末主题素养练（一）……	15
课时练 4	Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	17
课时练 5	Part B Let's learn ~ Group work ……	18
课时练 6	Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up……	19
课时练 7	Part C Story time ……	20
培优练	周末主题素养练（二）……	21

Unit 3 What would you like?



课时练 1	Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	23
课时练 2	Part A Let's learn ~ Role-play …	24
课时练 3	Part A Let's spell ……	25
培优练	周末主题素养练（一）……	26
课时练 4	Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	28
课时练 5	Part B Let's learn ~ Look, write and say ……	29
课时练 6	Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ……	30
课时练 7	Part C Story time ……	31
培优练	周末主题素养练（二）……	32

Recycle 1

阶段复习练	Units 1 ~ 3 ……	34

Unit 4 What can you do?



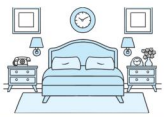
课时练 1	Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	36
课时练 2	Part A Let's learn ~ Do a survey …37	
课时练 3	Part A Let's spell ……	38
培优练	周末主题素养练（一）……	39
课时练 4	Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk ……	41
课时练 5	Part B Let's learn ~ Write and say ……	42
课时练 6	Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up ……	43
课时练 7	Part C Story time ……	44
培优练	周末主题素养练（二）……	45

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Contents

Unit 5 There is a big bed



课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk …… 47
课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Let's play …… 48
课时练 3 Part A Let's spell …… 49
培优练 周末主题素养练（一） …… 50

课时练 4 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk …… 52
课时练 5 Part B Let's learn ~ Find and say …… 53
课时练 6 Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up …… 54
课时练 7 Part C Story time …… 55
培优练 周末主题素养练（二） …… 56

Unit 6 In a nature park



课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk …… 58
课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Draw and ask …… 59
课时练 3 Part A Let's spell …… 60
培优练 周末主题素养练（一） …… 61

课时练 4 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk …… 63
课时练 5 Part B Let's learn ~ Write and say …… 64
课时练 6 Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up …… 65
课时练 7 Part C Story time …… 66
培优练 周末主题素养练（二） …… 67

Recycle 2

阶段复习练 Units 4 ~ 6 …… 69

基础默写卡

Unit 1 基础默写卡
Part A …… 71
Part B …… 71
Unit 2 基础默写卡
Part A …… 72
Part B …… 72
Unit 3 基础默写卡
Part A …… 73
Part B …… 73
Unit 4 基础默写卡
Part A …… 74
Part B …… 74
Unit 5 基础默写卡
Part A …… 75
Part B …… 75
Unit 6 基础默写卡
Part A …… 76
Part B …… 76

活页检测卷（见夹卷83-114）

Unit 1 达标检测卷
Unit 2 达标检测卷
Unit 3 达标检测卷
期中检测卷
Unit 4 达标检测卷
Unit 5 达标检测卷
Unit 6 达标检测卷
期末检测卷

参考答案及点拨 …… 77

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

题有千变万化 我有妙法拆招

——本书题型解题方法示例

小学《典中点》英语再度全新升级，为大家带来了解题良方——解题的方法。有方法，解题快，不丢分！更多绝招请大家在书中寻找哦。



书面表达

综合能力题

阅读理解
完形填空
补全对话

五、阅读短文，根据短文内容填空。

【寻读关键词法】

This is a picture of my room. There is a new blue bed in my room. It's near the window. It's nice and comfortable. There is a table near my bed. There is a lamp on the table. My bag is near the chair on the floor. My teddy bear is under the bed. It's very cute. I think my room is clean. Do you think so?

1. There is a _____ in my room.

方法点拨：此题用寻读关键词法解答。

先阅读题干，找出题干中的关键词，再根据关键词在短文中寻读出关键句，通过阅读关键句找出答案。如第1小题，题干中的关键词有：in my room；blue。根据关键词可在短文中寻找出关键句是短文第二句“There is a new blue bed in my room.”即可得出答案填bed。

句子题

改写句子　句子翻译　句意填空

单项选择题

二、单项选择。

【魔法记忆法】

(　　) 2. What do you have _____ Tuesdays?

A. on　　B. in　　C. at

方法点拨：本题用魔法记忆法解答。

早、午、晚前要用in；at黎明、午、夜、点与分；年、月、季节前要用in；日子、星期、年月日，星期加上早、午、晚，on在前面不能忘。

词汇题

二、看图补全句子。

【图文一致法】

1. I often _____ on the weekend.



方法点拨：此题用图文一致法解答。

先观察图片，然后根据图片将相应的短语填在句子中。填写时注意保证整体句型的正确性。例如：第1题中的图片是做作业，那么横线上应填短语“do my homework”，最后观察整个句子，主语是I，所以答案填do my homework。

听力题

三、Tom和Amy在谈论周六的活动，请听一听，按照Tom和Amy的对话内容选择正确答案。

(　　) 1. Where are Tom and Amy?

【听前预测法】

A. In the park.　　B. At school.

C. In the street.

方法点拨：本题用听前预测法解答。

阅读题干中的关键词“Where”可知是询问地点，听中多注意听地点类名词，从而得出答案。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 What's he like?

课时练 1 Part A Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见 77 页)

一、核心素养练

同学们，英语中有很多单词是成对出现的，在记忆单词的过程中，将意义相反的单词进行归类记忆，可以达到事半功倍的效果。快来试试吧。

选出下列单词的反义词，写在横线上并尝试记忆。

如：black—white

quiet short tall young

1. old — young
2. long — short
3. short — tall
4. loud — quiet

二、单项选择。

(C) 1. —_____ is this boy? —He's Jack.
A. What B. Whose C. Who

(C) 2. _____ you know Miss White?
A. Are B. Does C. Do

(C) 3. —Is she young? —_____
A. Yes, she isn't. B. No, he isn't.
C. Yes, she is.

(C) 4. This is _____ Wang. He's tall.
A. Miss B. Ms C. Mr

(A) 5. Miss White is _____ English teacher.
A. our B. us C. he

三、给下列句子选出正确的答语。

(C) 1. Who's this man?
(D) 2. Do you know Ms Yang?
(B) 3. Is your sister funny?
(A) 4. Who's she?
(E) 5. Is your English teacher kind?

A. She's my friend Jenny.
B. Yes, she is.
C. He's my PE teacher.
D. No, I don't.
E. Yes, but sometimes he's a little strict.

四、连词成句。 【全书导学号 7217133】

1. is Mr who Zhang (?)
Who is Mr Zhang?
2. music she our is teacher (.)
She is our music teacher.
3. like teachers I funny (.)
I like funny teachers.
4. mother your tall is (?)
Is your mother tall?
5. know Miss do Green you (?)
Do you know Miss Green?

五、读图，选出与所给图片相符的句子。



(D) (C) (A) (E) (B)

A. My uncle is a doctor. He's young.
B. I have a friend. She is a little short.
C. Look at the man. He has short hair. He is fat. He is my brother.
D. Do you know my English teacher? She is tall and thin. She wears glasses.
E. This old man is my grandpa. He is very funny.

听 六、听 Tom 介绍他本学期的新英语老师，并根据 Tom 的介绍，画一画他的新老师。

听力训练

微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn~Ask and answer

☞(点拨见77页)

一、根据提示，看图补全句子。

1. My music teacher is (old/young) __old__.



2. My art teacher is (old/young) __young__.



3. Our maths teacher is __strict__ (严厉的).



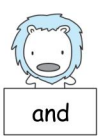
4. Our English teacher Miss White is (kind/strict) __kind__.



5. Chen Jie's science teacher is (funny/strict) __funny__. She makes us laugh.



二、选词填空。 【全书导学号 7217133】


and


Who's


your


have


strong

1. Who's __your__ Chinese teacher?
2. My brother is young __and__ cute.
3. Is your father __strong__?
4. I __have__ two new teachers.
5. __Who's__ that nice lady?

三、给下列句子排序。

(3) Look at that woman.
(5) What's she like? Is she kind?
(1) These are my teachers.
(2) Who's your Chinese teacher?
(6) Yes, she's very kind, but she's strict sometimes.
(4) That's Ms Zhang, my Chinese teacher.

四、根据图片及所给提示，补全对话。

1. A: __Who is she?__
B: Mrs Liu.
A: __Is she kind?__
B: Yes, she is.


(kind)

2. A: Who's this man?
B: __He is my maths teacher.__
A: Is he young?
B: __No, he isn't.__


(my maths teacher)

五、根据介绍找出 Wu Yifan 和 Chen Jie 的新老师。 【抓关键信息法】

A. 
B. 
C. 

D. 


1. Our music teacher is not young. He's tall and kind. He's very handsome. Who's he? He is __D__.


2. Our English teacher is very young. She has blond curly hair. Who's she? She is __A__.


3. Our PE teacher is very tall. He's young and strong. He plays football well. Who's he? He is __B__.


4. Our Chinese teacher is friendly. She's kind, too. She has straight hair. Who's she? She is __C__.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

(点拨见 77 页)

一、选出下列每组单词画线部分发音不同的一项。

(C) 1. A. happy B. sunny C. you
(A) 2. A. baby B. yes C. yellow
(C) 3. A. sorry B. family C. fly
(C) 4. A. many B. party C. sky
(B) 5. A. you B. candy C. young

二、读句子，找出含有字母 y 的单词，并根据发音分类。

1. You're a funny girl. Don't be shy.
2. Lily and Lucy go to the party.
3. Don't cry. Just have a try.
4. This yellow duck is for your baby.

happy	my	young
funny, Lily, Lucy, party, baby	shy, cry, try	you, yellow, your

三、单项选择。

(B) 1. Our Chinese teacher _____ very funny.
A. has B. is C. are

(B) 2. —_____ your maths teacher?
—Miss Chen.
A. Where's B. Who's C. What's

(C) 3. —_____ strict?
—No, she is very kind and funny.
A. Do you B. Is he C. Is she

(B) 4. —Who's _____ Smith?
—She is the head teacher.
A. Mr B. Mrs C. /

(B) 5. —Is your father _____?
—No, he is a little short.
A. young B. tall C. old

四、连词成句，并根据图片回答问题。

1.  2.  3. 

Mr Green friendly Mr Smith

1. your who maths is teacher (?)
Who is your maths teacher?
Mr Green.

2. friendly your is teacher music (?)
Is your music teacher friendly?
Yes, she is.

3. head who your is teacher (?)
Who is your head teacher?
Mr Smith.

五、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

Hello, I'm your new classmate Tony. Now I study in Xinhua Primary School. I have new teachers at school. I like my science teacher—Mr Hu. He's tall and thin. He's very handsome. He's smart, too. He often has many new ideas. Ms Chen is my Chinese teacher. She's quiet. She likes reading books. My music teacher Mrs Wang is very beautiful. She's fashionable. She's friendly, too. I like my new teachers, and I like my new school.

(C) 1. Tony is talking about his _____.
A. new classmates B. new friends
C. new teachers

(B) 2. The word "fashionable" means "_____".
A. 快乐的 B. 时尚的 C. 美丽的

(C) 3. _____ is beautiful.
A. Mr Hu B. Ms Chen
C. Mrs Wang

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练(一)

(点拨见77页)

主题素养感悟

主话题 讨论人物的外貌特征及其性格特征。

知识点

外貌特征	性格特征	重要句式
tall short old young	funny kind strict	—Who's your art teacher? —Mr Jones. —Is he young? —Yes, he is. /No, he isn't.

能力素养 能够准确认识常见的描述人物外貌及性格特征的英语形容词，并能够在情境中询问并回答关于人物外貌及性格特征的问题。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Jenny 和 Danny 在谈论他们的新老师，听一听，选出老师们的正确图片吧！

(B) 1. A.  B. 

(A) 2. A. 

B. 

(B) 3. A.  B. 

(A) 4. A.  B. 

二、Sam 这周日要和家人去机场接朋友，请你听一听，帮他把朋友的姓名和图片连在一起。

1. John　2. Joe　3. Lucy　4. Simon

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

三、Chen Jie 在向朋友们介绍她的家人。听一听，找出和 Chen Jie 的介绍内容相符的一项。

(B) 1. A. Chen Jie's mother is very fat.
B. Chen Jie's mother is a little fat.
C. Chen Jie's mother is nice and friendly.

(C) 2. A. Chen Jie's father is strict.
B. Chen Jie's father is short.
C. Chen Jie's father is tall and thin.

(A) 3. A. Chen Jie's grandpa is funny.
B. Chen Jie's grand pa is tall.
C. Chen Jie's grand pa is kind and friendly.

趣读写

四、核心素养练

发现或感受事物的特点，是我们必备的能力之一。我们要能够在阅读中抓住关键的信息。

Jenny 用猜谜的方式告诉朋友们关于新学期新老师的事情，请你将与图片匹配的句子的序号写在横线上。 【图文一致法】

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料


2


4


3


1

1. He's short and a little thin. He wears glasses. He's old, but his class is very funny. He's my science teacher.
2. He is short and fat. He wears glasses too. He's very smart. He's my maths teacher.
3. My English teacher is tall and thin. She's very beautiful. She speaks English very well. She's kind too.
4. He's tall and thin. He is friendly. He sings very well. He's my music teacher Mr Hu.

五、下面是关于 John 的新老师的介绍，请读一读，寻找恰当的信息。

I have a new maths teacher. He's Mr Li. He's more than 30 years old. He is very handsome. He is tall and thin. He has big eyes. He has short black hair. He likes dogs and rabbits very much. And he likes singing and playing basketball, too. His maths class is very funny. We often play games in maths class. He is kind to us, but sometimes he is strict. We all like him.

1. 在描述李老师特征的单词后打“√”。

old		funny	√	handsome	√
tall	√	young		strict	√
short		kind	√	helpful	
thin	√	fat		smart	

(A) 2. The phrase "more than" means "_____".
A. 超过 B. 低于 C. 小于

(B) 3. He likes _____.
A. playing football B. singing
C. cats

六、假如你是 Jenny，请根据下面的表格信息，简单介绍一下你的新老师。（提示：请介绍新老师的姓名、外貌特征、兴趣及性格特点等。）

姓名	Mary
兴趣	music
外貌特征	tall, young, big eyes
性格特点	friendly, a little strict

Hello, everyone! This term, I have a new teacher. She is Mary. She is tall and thin. She's young, too. She has big eyes. She likes music. She often sings English songs to us. She is a little strict. But she is often friendly to us. We all like her very much.



七、请根据 Amy 的老师及家人的照片，仿照例子准确描述人物的性格及外貌特征。



例：



Chinese teacher; kind）

—Do you know my Chinese teacher?
—No. Is she kind?
—Yes, she is.

1. 
(my brother; funny)

2. 
(PE teacher; strong)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见77页)

一、圈出字谜中描述人物性格及外貌的单词并写在横线上。

s	o	a	b	c	e	o	d	a
t	f	r	i	e	n	d	l	y
r	u	k	c	a	b	c	d	e
i	n	i	a	c	d	f	a	o
c	n	n	f	q	u	i	e	t
t	y	d	o	s	u	t	e	m

1. strict 2. funny
3. kind 4. nice
5. quiet 6. friendly (圈图略)

二、单项选择。

(B) 1. Ms Chen _____ our new science teacher.
A. will B. will be C. be

(B) 2. _____ she like?
A. What do B. What's
C. What

(A) 3. _____ she is strict.
A. Sometimes B. Sometime
C. Some time

(B) 4. _____ you know her?
A. Does B. Do C. Are

(B) 5. She is _____ sister.
A. me B. my C. he

三、给下列句子排序，使它们组成一段通顺的对话。

(5) Yes, sometimes.
(3) He's friendly.
(1) Mr Chang will be our new PE teacher.
(8) Wow, cool!
(2) Really? What's he like?
(6) Do you know him?
(4) Is he strict?
(7) Yes, he's my father.

四、根据所给图片和首字母提示完成对话。


Mr Hu



Miss Yu


Mr Li

Mary: Good afternoon! We have three new teachers.
Lucy: Really? Who are they?
Mary: Our new maths teacher is Mr Hu. He's tall and thin.
Lucy: Wow! What about other teachers?
Mary: Our new English teacher is Miss Yu. She is nice and young. She has long hair. Our head teacher is new, too.
Lucy: What's he like?
Mary: He's old.
Lucy: Is he strict?
Mary: No, he's kind. He's our new science teacher, too. I know him well. He is my grandpa.
Lucy: Cool!

五、听录音，判断所听内容与图片是(T)否(F)相符。

听力训练

(F) 1. 
(T) 2. 
(T) 3. 
(T) 4. 

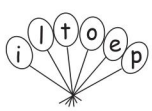
微信公众号 教辅资料站

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

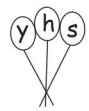
课时练 5 Part B Let's learn~Match and say

☞(点拨见 77 页)

一、把下列字母组成正确的单词写在横线上。



1. polite



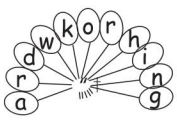
2. shy



3. clever



4. helpful



5. hard-working

二、看图补全句子。

1. Lily is hard-working.



2. They are (helpful/clever) helpful.



3. The students are polite.



4. This little girl is shy.



5. My good friend John is clever.



三、补全对话。

Mary: Hi, John. 1. D

John: Really?

Mary: Yes, he's Mr Tian.

John: 2. C

Mary: Yes. He's only 23 years old.

John: 3. A

Mary: He's friendly and kind. 4. B

A. What's he like?
B. And he's very clever.
C. Is he young?
D. We will have a new Chinese teacher.

四、看图片，回答问题。

1. What's this girl like?



She's helpful.

2. What are the students like?



They are polite.

3. What is the boy like?



He's shy.

五、任务型阅读。

（一）选词填空，补全短文。

mother kind strict long hair Ms Fang
her smart maths from sometimes

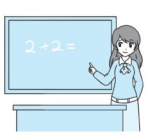
This is 1. Ms Fang. She is Chen Jie's 2. mother. She is 3. her new 4. maths teacher, too. She is 5. from China. She is very 6. kind to her students. She is 7. smart, too. But 8. sometimes she is 9. strict. She has 10. long hair. She is a good teacher.

（二）根据短文内容，在正确的老师图片下画☺。

A.



B.



☺

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part B Read and write~Let's wrap it up

(点拨见 78 页)

一、核心素养练

在英语单词中有一个特别的单词 be，它有多样变化。我（I）用 am，你（you）用 are，is 连着他（he），她（she），它（it）。

选择合适的 be 动词，补全句子。

1. I __am__ helpful at home.
2. My mother __is__ very nice.
3. The elephant __is__ big and strong.
4. Mr Hu __is__ very strict.
5. The children __are__ polite.
6. You __are__ a little shy.
7. They __are__ old.

二、根据图片和首字母提示写单词，使句子完整。



1. Tom is my best __friend__. He is __helpful__. He often helps his mother do the housework.



2. Sue is my little __sister__. She is very __polite__.



3. This is my __mother__. She is __hard-working__ at home. She often cooks meals.



4. This is my __grandmother/grandma__. She is __kind__ and __funny/friendly__. She often tells interesting stories to us.

三、补全对话。

Amy: Hi, Oliver! 1. __D__ She's a girl.
Oliver: 2. __E__
Amy: Her name is Lucy.
Oliver: 3. __C__
Amy: Yes, she's polite, too.
Oliver: Ms Wang will be our Chinese teacher.
Amy: 4. __A__ Is she kind?
Oliver: Yes. 5. __B__

A. Really?
B. But sometimes she's a little strict.
C. Is she friendly?
D. Today we have a new classmate.
E. What's her name?

四、阅读短文，完成表格。【抓关键词法】

Hi, friends! I have four new teachers. My new Chinese teacher is Mrs Green. She is not very young, but she is very kind. She always wears glasses. She has short hair. I love her. Mr White is my maths teacher. He is short. He is very funny. Miss Li is my music teacher. She has long black hair and two big eyes. She is very young. Mr Brown is my English teacher. He is young, too. He's from America. He has blue eyes. He is very clever. I like my new teachers.

			
1. Mr White	2. Miss Li	3. Mrs Green	Mr Brown
maths teacher	4. music teacher	Chinese teacher	5. English teacher
6. short	7. long black hair, two big eyes	8. short hair, wears glasses	blue eyes
9. funny	young	10. kind	11. young, clever

微信公众号 教辅资料站

课时练 7 Part C Story time

☞(点拨见 78 页)

课内阅读对点练

一、请根据课本中 "Story time" 的故事完成以下任务。(教材第 11 页)

(一) 请快速判断以下句子是否与故事内容相符。相符圈 YES,不相符圈 NO。

1. Zip and Zoom have a new PE teacher.

YES NO

2. The PE teacher is a good basketball player.

YES NO

3. The PE teacher is tall and strong.

YES NO

4. The meaning of "missed" in the text is "想念".

YES NO

5. The elephant is their new PE teacher.

YES NO

(二) 根据故事内容回答问题。



1. What does Zip know about the PE teacher?

He's a good football player.

2. What must the PE teacher be like?

He must be tall and strong.



3. Who joins in the football game?

Rabbit.

4. What is Rabbit like?

He's short and thin.



5. Who is the real PE teacher?

Rabbit.

(三) 英国文化知多少。(选择恰当的一项)

(C) 1. The family name in the Western country is _____.

A. John White

B. John

C. White

(B) 2. The family name in China is _____.

A. Chen Jie

B. Chen

C. Jie

(C) 3. In the USA, we can call a teacher _____. 【全书导学号 7217133】

A. Miss White John

B. Miss John

C. Miss White

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文,判断正(T)误(F)。

Look at the pictures. They are my good friends. They're Ann, Mike and Bob. Bob is tall and strong. He has short hair and wears glasses. He has some English books. Mike is short and thin. He is very friendly. He has some maths books. Ann is very quiet. She has long hair and a small mouth. She has many storybooks.

(F) 1. The writer(作者) has four friends.

(T) 2. Bob has some English books.

(F) 3. Mike is tall and thin.

(T) 4. Ann is a quiet girl.

(F) 5. Ann has short hair and a small mouth.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练(二)

(点拨见 78 页)

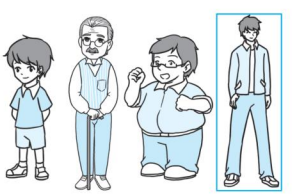
主题素养感悟

- **主话题** 描述人物性格和外貌特征。
- **知识点** 与人物性格和外貌特征相关的词汇：polite hard-working helpful clever shy strong
  重要句式：—What's Wu Yifan/ he/ she like?
  —He/ She is...
- **能力素养** 能够准确认识常见描述人物外貌及性格特征的英语形容词，并能够在情境中询问并回答关于人物外貌及性格特征的问题。
- **文化素养** 能够树立正确的审美观，避免以貌取人；了解中西方称呼的表达及西方国家的礼貌用语。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Danny 在和同学们玩狼人杀的游戏。请听一听，根据 Danny 的描述，在“队友中”找出潜伏其中的狼人，并圈出他的图片。【听关键词法】



二、Danny 要带同学去见笔友，听一听，下面有关人物性格特点及外貌特征的图片与 Danny 的描述一致吗？一致写 T，不一致写 F。

(T) 1. 

(F) 2. 

(F) 3. 

(F) 4. 

(F) 5. 

三、Tom 正在和 Danny 玩问答游戏，请根据他们提出的问题，帮他们做出合理的回应吧。

(A) 1. A. She's kind. B. He's kind. C. It is very cute.

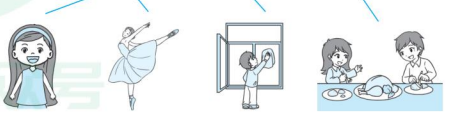
(B) 2. A. Yes, there is. B. Yes, she is. C. No, he's kind.

(A) 3. A. She's my Chinese teacher. B. She's 30 years old. C. She's polite.

(B) 4. A. It's tall and thin. B. It's fat and strong. C. It's cute.

四、Chen Jie 的朋友们发出招友公告。你来通过他们的招友公告为他们选择合适的朋友吧。(将人名与其要找的朋友图片连线)

1. Lisa 2. Tom 3. Tony 4. Lucy



A B C D

微信公众号 教辅资料站

趣读写

五、这是 Danny 的家庭照片。请判断句子与照片内容是（T）否（F）相符。



(T) 1. Danny's father is tall and handsome.

(T) 2. Danny's sister is short. She has a big mouth and big eyes. She's very cute.

(F) 3. There are eight people in Danny's family.

(F) 4. Danny's grandparents aren't old. They both wear glasses.

(T) 5. Danny's little brother is young and cute.

六、Danny 和 Chen Jie 正在谈论新来的老师，她有哪些性格特点呢？读一读，补全对话。

Chen Jie: Hey, Mrs Wang will be our new Chinese teacher.

Danny: Really? 1. C

Chen Jie: She's kind.

Danny: 2. A

Chen Jie: 3. D

Danny: Do you know her?

Chen Jie: 4. B

Danny: Haha. Cool!

A. Is she strict?
B. Yes, she's my mother!
C. What's she like?
D. Yes, sometimes.

七、Danny 在同学的 party 上玩“盲人摸象”的游戏，读一读，看看他都摸到了谁，请按他摸到的人的先后顺序，给下列图片排序。

Today we play a game at Jack's party. First I touch a girl. She is thin and short. She has a big head. Then I touch a boy. He's strong. He has short hair and a big mouth. Next I touch a girl with long straight hair. Her face is a little fat. At last I touch a boy. He's tall. He has long legs. Can you help me find their pictures?


(3)


(4)


(1)


(2)

八、你有偶像吗？他（她）多大了，性格好吗？长得怎么样？喜欢什么？请描述一下你心中的偶像。

提示词：idol, kind, … years old, strong, tall, like

I have an idol. He is a kind man. He's more than 30 years old. He's very tall and strong. He's hard-working. He likes playing basketball. Do you know him? Haha! He's Yao Ming.

趣说练

九、朗读小达人。 读一读下面关于描述人物性格的句子，注意语音语调。

口语测评

1. —What's Chen Jie like?
—She's quiet.
2. They are helpful.
3. —Is he hard-working? —No, he isn't.

微信公众号 教辅资料站

Unit 2 My week

课时练 1 Part A Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见 78 页)

一、读对话，选择对应的图片。



A B C D

(D) 1. —What do you have on Mondays?
—We have an art class.

(B) 2. —What do you have on Wednesdays?
—We have PE.

(C) 3. —What do you have on Tuesdays?
—We have English.

(A) 4. —What do you have on Thursdays?
—We have music.

二、单项选择。

(C) 1. _____ the pictures of me.
A. Look B. Look is C. Look at

(A) 2. What do you have _____ Tuesdays? 【魔法记忆法】
A. on B. in C. at

(C) 3. I _____ maths, English and music.
A. has B. am C. have

(B) 4. —_____ your music teacher?
—Li Ming's father.
A. What's B. Who's C. Where's

(C) 5. I drink some tea _____ your grandma!
A. and B. for C. with

三、给下列句子选出正确的答语。

(D) 1. What do you do on Thursdays?

(A) 2. Who's your science teacher?

(C) 3. What do you have on Mondays?

(B) 4. Is she strict?

(E) 5. Is your grandfather tall?

A. Mr White.
B. No, she is funny.
C. We have Chinese and music.
D. I often do my homework.
E. Yes, he is. He's thin, too.

四、连词成句。 【全书导学号 7217133】

1. have on do what you Fridays (?)
What do you have on Fridays?

2. music have we (.)
We have music.

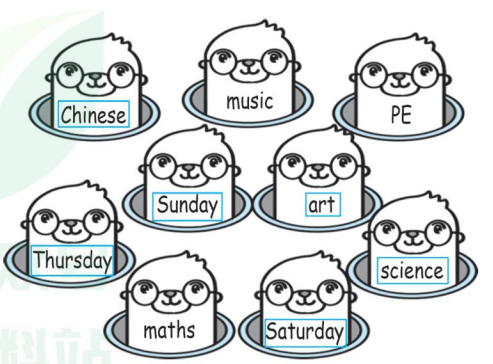
3. picture at look this (.)
Look at this picture.

4. computer is teacher who your (?)
Who is your computer teacher?

5. with a I dance have class friends my (.)
I have a dance class with my friends.

听 五、打地鼠。听录音，根据你所听到的内容圈出要打的地鼠单词。

听力训练



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn~Let's play

☞(点拨见 78 页)

一、看图补全句子。

1. We have music on __Monday__.



2. We have art on __Friday__.



3. We have maths on __Wednesday__.



4. We have no classes on __Saturday__.



5. We often fly kites on __Sunday__.



二、单项选择。

(C) 1. —What _____ you _____ on Mondays?
—I have PE.
A. do; does B. are; have
C. do; have

(B) 2. I have six _____ on Tuesdays.
A. class B. classes C. a class

(A) 3. Work out a schedule _____ your partner.
A. with B. and C. to

(C) 4. —Is it Friday today?
—_____
A. Yes, it's. B. No, it is.
C. No, it isn't.

(B) 5. John _____ Chinese, maths and PE on Mondays.
A. is B. has C. have

三、补全对话。

A: Hello, Bob! May I ask you some questions?
B: Yes, please.
A: 1. __D__
B: We have four.
A: 2. __E__
B: They are maths, Chinese, English and PE.
A: 3. __B__
B: We have two. They are music and art.
A: 4. __C__
B: Yes, I do.
A: 5. __A__
B: I like art best. I like drawing and painting.
A: That's great.

A. What subject do you like best?
B. What about afternoon?
C. Do you like music?
D. How many lessons do you have in the morning?
E. What are they?

四、根据表格内容填空。

Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
Chinese	maths	English	maths	English
English	Chinese	Chinese	Chinese	science
maths	science	art	English	maths
music	art	maths	computer class	computer class
art	PE	reading class	PE	art
reading class	music		reading class	

1. I have PE on __Tuesdays__ and __Thursdays__.
2. I have three __reading__ __classes__ in a week.
3. I have English, __science__, __maths__, a __computer class__ and __art__ on Fridays.
4. Tomorrow is __Wednesday__. I have English, Chinese, art, maths and a reading class.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

（点拨见 78 页）

一、判断下列每组单词画线部分发音是否相同，相同的画☺，不同的画☹。

（ ☺ ）1. beef　feet

（ ☹ ）2. tea　head

（ ☺ ）3. bread　breakfast

（ ☺ ）4. meet　eat

（ ☺ ）5. feed　teacher

二、读一读，判断句子中单词画线部分的发音是（T）否（F）相同。

（ T ）1. I see a sheep sleeping on the jeep.

（ F ）2. I eat some beef, meat, bread for breakfast.

（ T ）3. Could you read and repeat it?

（ T ）4. The bee and the sheep see the food.

（ F ）5. There is some bread in the teacher's hand.

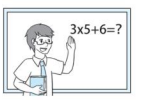
三、根据图片提示补全对话。

1. —What day is it today?
—It's Thursday.
—What do you have on Thursdays?

	星期四
1	语文
2	
3	英语
4	

—I have Chinese and English.

2. —Who's your maths teacher?
—Mr Young.
—Is he kind?
—No, he isn't.



3. —What do you do on Tuesdays, Grandpa?
—I have a cooking class with your grandma.



四、按要求完成句子。

1. Is it Saturday today?（用 Wednesday 回答）
No, it's Wednesday.

2. We have maths and PE on Tuesdays.（对画线部分进行提问）
What do you have on Tuesdays?

五、阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

Hello, I'm Oliver. I study in Hope School. I have Chinese and English every day. I don't have maths on Fridays. But I have music on Fridays. I love music. Our music teacher is old and funny. I have art on Mondays and Wednesdays. On Thursdays, I have a computer class. I have PE on Tuesdays and Thursdays.

（ T ）1. Oliver has Chinese every day.

（ T ）2. Oliver doesn't have maths on Fridays.

（ F ）3. Oliver likes computer classes very much.

（ T ）4. Oliver doesn't have PE on Wednesdays.

（ T ）5. Oliver has English, Chinese and art on Wednesdays.【整合信息法】

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练（一）

（点拨见 79 页）

主题素养感悟

主话题 学校日常课程安排。

知识点

一周的日期

Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday
Friday Saturday Sunday

重要句式

—What do you have on Mondays?
—I have Chinese, English, maths and music.

能力素养 能够在情境中准确使用核心句型询问并回答某天的课程安排。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Mike 和 John 正在玩听音猜词的游戏，请你帮助 John 选出他听到的单词。

(B) 1. A. Thursday B. Tuesday C. Monday
(A) 2. A. weekend B. week C. wait
(B) 3. A. cook B. cooking C. look
(A) 4. A. maths B. computer C. PE
(C) 5. A. have B. has C. his

二、Jenny 和 Danny 在谈论他们的新课表，听一听，判断他们的谈论内容与图片是（T）否（F）相符。

(F) 1. 



(T) 2. 



(F) 3. 



(T) 4. 



三、明天就是周一了，Jenny 在和朋友们谈论周一的课程，请你听一听，帮她把下面的姓名和相关图片连在一起。【人物定位法】

1. Jenny 2. Lucy 3. John 4. Simon



A B C D

趣读写

四、Jenny 是个小马虎，读对话，将 Jenny 明天要用的书的图片圈起来，并把妈妈给 Jenny 的留言补充完整吧！

Mum: Is it Sunday today, Jenny?
Jenny:Yes.
Mum:What do you do on Sundays?
Jenny:I do my homework and read books.
Mum:Good girl! What do you have on Mondays?
Jenny:We have Chinese, English and music.
Mum:Take your books, please.
Jenny:OK. Thank you, Mum.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



Sunday, Mar. 15, 2020

Dear Jenny,

Tomorrow is 1. Monday. You should take your 2. English book, 3. music book and 4. Chinese book.

Mum

五、核心素养练

当一个文段中有多个信息时，使用整理分类的方法，可以使分散而杂乱的信息条理化，使我们利用信息或记忆信息时更加便捷。

下面是John的新课表的信息，请读一读，完成下列各题。

Hello, everyone! This term we have a new schedule. Let me tell you. We have three maths classes every week. They're on Mondays, Wednesdays and Thursdays. We have Chinese on Tuesdays, Thursdays and Fridays. We have English on Mondays, Tuesdays and Thursdays. We have PE on Mondays and music on Fridays. I like Fridays best. Because we have other activities on Fridays, too. I join the dancing society.

（一）John每天都有哪些课程？请根据描述在表格的相应位置上打“√”。

	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
maths	√		√	√	
English	√	√		√	
Chinese		√		√	√
PE	√				
music					√

（二）根据John的描述，选择正确的答案。

(C) 1. The word "society" means " _____".

A. 队会　　B. 班会　　C. 社团

(B) 2. John's favourite day is _____.

A. Monday　　B. Friday　　C. Tuesday

六、

假如你是Jenny，请根据下面的表格，简单介绍一下你的新课表。提示：请介绍新课表的时间及课程安排。

要求：条理清晰，不少于5句话。

Mon.	music
Tues.	Chinese
Wed.	PE, maths
Thur.	science
Fri.	English

Look at my schedule. I have music on Mondays and Chinese on Tuesdays. I have PE and maths on Wednesdays. I have science on Thursdays and English on Fridays.





七、

请根据Amy老师提供的信息，仿照例子询问并回答他们的课程安排。

例： （Mondays, PE）

—What do you have on Mondays?

—I have PE.

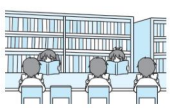
1.  (Tuesdays, English)

2.  (Wednesdays, music)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's try~Let's talk

一、 读对话，选择对应的图片。


A


B


C


D

(C) 1. —Do you often listen to music on the weekend?
—Yes, I do.

(B) 2. —Do you often play ping-pong here?
—No, I often draw pictures.

(A) 3. —Do you often read books?
—Yes, I often read with my friends.

(D) 4. —Do you clean the room?
—Yes, of course.

二、 单项选择。

(B) 1. —_____ that?
—It's a Chinese book.
A. What B. What's C. Where's

(C) 2. _____ often listen to music?
A. Are you B. Is you
C. Do you

(C) 3. This is _____ English book.
A. a B. some C. an

(A) 4. Do you often read books _____ the park?
A. in B. on C. under

(C) 5. Do you often play ping-pong _____ the weekend?
A. to B. with C. on

三、 根据表格内容，补全对话。

				
Amy	√			√
Mike	√			√
John	√		√	
Chen Jie		√	√	

1. —What do you do on the weekend, Amy?
—I often play football and listen to music.
2. —Do you often play ping-pong on the weekend, Mike?
—No, I don't. I often play football and listen to music.
3. —What do you often do on the weekend, Chen Jie?
—I often play ping-pong and read books.
4. —Do you often read books on the weekend, John?
—Yes, I do.

听 四、听录音，按顺序将图片连起来，看看是什么图形。

听力训练











It's a star（连线略）.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn~Group work

(点拨见 79 页)

一、补全短语，并将其序号填入图下括号内。

A. w a t ch TV

B. d o h o m e w o r k

C. r e a d b o o ks

D. pl a y f o o tball

E. w a sh my cl o thes

F. dr a w p i ct u r es



1. (B)



2. (A)



. (D)



4. (E)



5. (C)



6. (F)

二、看图补全句子。【图文一致法】

1. I often do my homework on the weekend.



2. —Do you often watch TV?
—Yes, I do.



3. We often play football together on the weekend.



4. I often wash my clothes on Sundays.



5. —Does Mark often read books
—Yes, he does.



三、情景对话，选择合适的句子补全对话。

A: Hi, Mike. 1. B

B: No, it's Friday.

A: 2. C

B: We have English, computer class, art and PE.

A: Tomorrow (明天) is Saturday. We don't go to school. 3. A

B: I often read books on Saturdays.
4. E

A: I often play basketball with my father.

B: Great! 5. D

A: Yes, he's tall and strong.

A. What do you do on Saturdays?
B. Is it Thursday today?
C. What do we have on Fridays?
D. Is your father strong?
E. What about you?

四、按要求完成句子，一空一词 。

1. I often wash my clothes on the weekend.
(变一般疑问句并作否定回答)

Do you often wash your clothes on the weekend?

No, I don't.

2. I often read books in the afternoon.
(变一般疑问句并作肯定回答)

Do you often read books in the afternoon?

Yes, I do.

3. I often watch TV with my father.
(对画线部分进行提问)

What do you often do with your father?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part B Read and write~Let's wrap it up

☞(点拨见 79 页)

一、仿照例子，写几个词语。

例: bed + room = bedroom

Mon + day = Monday

1. Tues + day = Tuesday
2. Wednes + day = Wednesday
3. Thurs + day = Thursday
4. Fri + day = Friday
5. Satur + day = Saturday
6. Sun + day = Sunday

二、单项选择。

(A) 1. You _____ sports every day.

A. should play B. are play

C. does play

(B) 2. Here _____ a new schedule for you.

A. am B. is C. are

(C) 3. I _____ sports. 【逆向思维法】

A. likes B. doesn't like

C. don't like

(C) 4. What do you do _____ Sundays?

A. to B. at C. on

(C) 5. Wu Yifan often _____ on the weekend.

A. watch TV B. watching TV

C. watches TV

三、根据图片补全问句或答语。

1. —What do you do on Saturdays?

— I often watch TV.



2. — Do you often do your homework?

—Yes, I do.



3. — What do you have on Wednesdays?



—I have maths and Chinese.

4. —Do you often listen to music?

— No, I often wash my clothes.



四、读对话，在日历下写出相应的动词短语。

Lily: John, what do you do at home?

John: I do many things. I wash my clothes on Mondays.

Lily: Do you read books on Tuesdays?

John: No, I don't. I play the violin on Tuesdays.

Lily: Do you do your homework on Wednesdays?

John: Yes, and I play football on Fridays.

Lily: What about Thursdays?

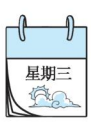
John: I often watch TV.

1. 

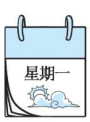
play football

2. 

play the violin

3. 

do homework

4. 

wash clothes

5. 

watch TV

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 7 Part C Story time

(点拨见 79 页)

课内阅读 对点练

一、请根据课本中“Story time”的故事完成以下任务。(教材第 21 页)

(一) 请快速判断以下句子是否与故事内容相符。相符圈 YES，不相符圈 NO。

1. Zip and Zoom go shopping.

YES NO

2. They have maths on Mondays and Wednesdays.

YES NO

3. They buy some notebooks, a ruler and a box of crayons.

YES NO

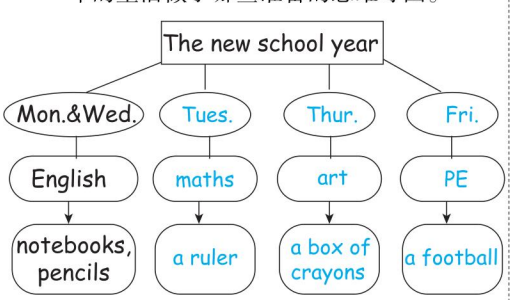
4. The meaning of "put back" in the text is "放在背上".

YES NO

5. They buy a football.

YES NO

(二) 根据故事内容完成 Zoom 和 Zip 为新学年的生活做了哪些准备的思维导图。



(三) 英国文化知多少。(选择恰当的一项)

(B) 1. The first day of the week is _____.

A. Monday B. Sunday C. Tuesday

(B) 2. The last day of the week is _____.

A. Sunday B. Saturday C. Friday

拓展阅读 提升练

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

(一) 阅读短文，判断正 (T) 误 (F)。

My days of the week

My name is Tom. I'm a student of Grade Six in Yucai Primary School.

I go to school from Mondays to Fridays. I have Chinese, music, and maths on Mondays and Wednesdays. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I have science and English. I like Fridays best, because I have PE and art. On the weekend, I often play football with my good friends.

What a busy week!

(F) 1. On Mondays, Tom has Chinese, music and English.

(T) 2. Tom has English on Tuesdays and Thursdays.

(T) 3. Tom doesn't go to school on the weekend.

(T) 4. Tom has PE and art on Fridays.

(T) 5. Tom's favourite day is Friday.

【语义一致法】

(二) 阅读短文，完成表格。

Mon.	1. Chinese	maths	music
Tues.	English	science	
Wed.	Chinese	maths	music
Thur.	English	science	
Fri.	PE	art	
weekend	2. play football		

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练（二）

（点拨见80页）

主题素养感悟

主话题 描述学校课程安排及周末活动。

知识点

活动短语：wash my clothes　watch TV　do homework　read books　play football

重要句式：—Do you often read books on the weekend?
—Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

能力素养 能够在老师的帮助和图片提示下表述他人周末活动情况。

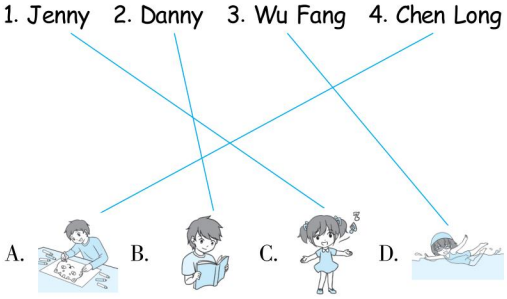
文化素养 了解英美国家一周的第一天是星期日，让学生初步意识到中外文化的差异。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Danny 在和同学们谈论新学年课后活动安排。请听一听，将人物名字和图片连线。

1. Jenny　2. Danny　3. Wu Fang　4. Chen Long



二、Jenny 正在和朋友们谈论周末活动安排，请听一听，判断所听内容与图片是（T）否（F）相符。

（ T ）1. 

（ T ）2. 

（ F ）3. 

（ T ）4. 

（ F ）5. 

三、Tom 和 Amy 在谈论周六的活动，请听一听，按照 Tom 和 Amy 的对话内容选择正确答案。

（ A ）1. Where are Tom and Amy?　【听前预测法】
A. In the park.　B. At school.
C. In the street.

（ B ）2. Does Tom often read books here?
A. Yes, he does.　B. No, he doesn't.
C. No, she doesn't.

（ A ）3. What does Amy often do in this park?
A. She often reads books here.
B. She often plays football here.
C. She often listens to music here.

趣读写

四、这是 Jack 一周的课程及活动安排。请根据课表内容补全短文。

	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
Jack		PE, English, maths	maths, Chinese	art, science	music, maths

My name is Jack. I often 1. play football on Mondays. I have 2. music

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

and 3. maths on Fridays. I have PE and English on 4. Tuesdays. I like Tuesdays very much. Because I like my PE teacher and English teacher. I don't like maths, but I have 5. maths on Tuesdays. My maths teacher is very strict. What about you?

五、读一读 John 和 Tony 的对话，帮助他们补全对话。 【全书导学号 7217133】

John: Hello, Tony!
Tony: Hi, John!
John: 1. E
Tony: Yes, it is.
John: Do you often watch TV on Saturdays?
Tony: 2. A I often do my homework.
John: 3. C
Tony: Yes, I do. 4. B
John: I often play football.
Tony: Really? 5. D
John: That's great!

A. No, I don't.
B. What about you?
C. Do you often read books on Sundays?
D. Let's play football together.
E. Is it Saturday today?

六、David 在介绍自己家人的周末活动，请根据 David 的介绍，回答下列问题。

There are five people in my family. My father is a teacher. He often reads books on Sunday morning. My mother often washes clothes on the weekend. My brother is Tom. He likes sports. He often plays football on the weekend. My little sister is hard-working. She often does her homework at home. I often watch TV on Saturday evening. What do you often do on the weekend? Do you often watch TV? Tell me, please!

1. How many people are there in David's family?
There are five people.
2. What does David's father often do on Sunday morning?
He often reads books on Sunday morning.
3. Who often washes clothes on the weekend?
David's mother often washes clothes on the weekend.
4. What does David's brother often do on the weekend?
He often plays football on the weekend.

七、你怎样安排自己一周的学习和生活？请说一说，让大家了解一下吧。

要求：条理清晰，不少于 5 句话。

I'm Lucy. I have classes from Mondays to Fridays. I have an English class on Fridays and I have a PE class on Tuesdays. I like Saturdays and Sundays very much! Because I have no classes. On Saturdays, I often go to Amy's home. Amy is my good friend. We usually do our homework. We sometimes play computer games. On Sundays, I like flying kites. I have many colorful kites.



八、Jenny 的朋友们周末都干了什么，请根据 Jenny 所给的图片和句型提示，描述她朋友们的周末活动安排。



例：



—Do you often play football on the weekend?
—Yes, I do.
(Yes)

1. 
(Yes)

2. 
(No) (Yes)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 What would you like?

课时练 1 Part A Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见 80 页)

一、根据所给图片，完成对话。

1. —What would you like to eat?
   —I'd like some fish.



2. —What would you like to drink?
   —I'd like some tea.



3. —What would you like to eat?
   —I'd like some vegetables.



4. —Would you like to drink some orange juice?
   —Yes, please.



5. —Do you often eat noodles?
   —Yes, I do. I like them very much.



二、单项选择。

(B) 1. What would you _____ drink?
A. like B. like to C. are like

(C) 2. I'd like a _____, please!
A. egg B. water C. sandwich

(B) 3. She would like some _____.
A. noodle B. bread C. pear

(C) 4. I'd like some tea. I'm _____.
A. tired B. hungry C. thirsty

(A) 5. —_____ would you like to drink?
—Some coffee, please!
A. What B. How C. Where

三、给下列句子选出正确的应答语。

(D) 1. What would you like to eat?
(C) 2. What would you like to drink?
(A) 3. Here you are!
(E) 4. Would you like some water?
(B) 5. Thanks!

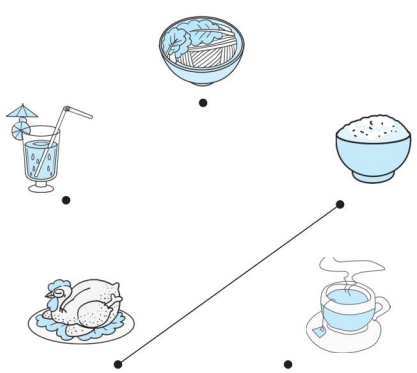
A. Thank you!
B. You're welcome!
C. I'd like some watermelon juice.
D. I'd like some rice and chicken.
E. Yes, please!

四、连词成句。

1. you drink what to like would (?)
   What would you like to drink?
2. are you here (.)
   Here you are.
3. eat to like what you would (?)
   What would you like to eat?
4. some eggs like I'd (.)
   I'd like some eggs.
5. like Sarah some would bread (.)
   Sarah would like some bread.

听 五、听录音，按顺序将图片用线连起来，看看是什么图形。

听力训练



最终连出来的图形是五角星。

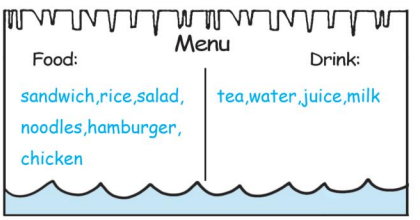
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn~Role-play

(点拨见 80 页)

一、读一读，把下列单词写在菜单的相应位置。

sandwich tea rice salad water noodles juice hamburger milk chicken

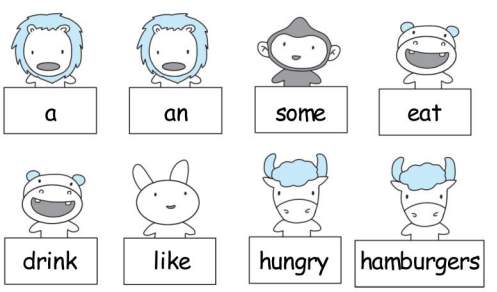


二、根据图片及首字母提示写单词，补全句子。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. It's hot. I'd like an ice cream .
2. I'm hungry. I want to eat a hamburger .
3. I'd like some salad . I like vegetables.
4. I'm thirsty. I would like some tea .

三、选词填空。



1. I'd like an orange.
2. Would you like some fish?
3. I'm hungry. I want a hot dog.
4. I'd like some hamburgers .
5. Sarah would like some candy to eat .
6. I'm hungry . I'd like some rice.
7. I'm thirsty. I'd like to drink some tea.
8. What would Sarah like to eat?

四、读对话，根据对话内容补全句子，并完成 Amy 与 Wu Yifan 的点餐单。

【全书导学号 7217133】

Waiter: Can I help you?

Amy: Yes, I'd like some mango juice, please! What about you, Yifan?

Wu Yifan: I'd like some coffee.

Waiter: What would you like to eat?

Amy: Would you like some chicken and rice, Yifan?

Wu Yifan: Sorry, I don't like rice. I'd like a chicken hamburger. And you?

Amy: I'd like some noodles and salad.

Waiter: OK, please wait!

Amy&Wu Yifan: How much are they?

Waiter: 24 yuan .

Amy: Here you are!

1. Wu Yifan doesn't like rice .
2. Amy would like to drink some mango juice .
3. Wu Yifan eats a chicken hamburger .
4. Wu Yifan drinks some coffee .

Amy's order	Wu Yifan's order
Food: 5. noodles and salad	Food: 7. a chicken hamburger
Drink: 6. mango juice	Drink: 8. coffee

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

一、判断下列句子中单词画线部分发音是否相同，相同写“T”，不同写“F”。

(T) 1. There's a brown cow.

(T) 2. The grass grows slowly.

(F) 3. Tomorrow I'll go to a small town.

(F) 4. The snow is falling down.

(F) 5. Wow, yellow flowers!

二、核心素养练

我们在使用英语时，要根据正确的情境，使用恰当而得体的句子。

请你根据所给情境，选择正确的句子。

(B) 1. 你饿了，你这样告诉妈妈：

A. I'm thirsty, Mum.

B. I'm hungry, Mum.

C. I'm happy, Mum.

(C) 2. 你想吃点冰激凌，你这样说：

A. I'd like some salad.

B. I'd like some hamburgers.

C. I'd like some ice cream.

(C) 3. 你问爸爸想喝点什么，你这样说：

A. What's that?

B. What do you have, Mum?

C. What would you like to drink, Dad?

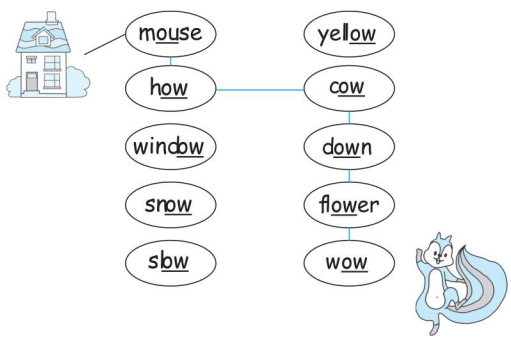
(A) 4. 你告诉妈妈你不喜欢吃披萨，你说：

A. I don't like pizza, Mum.

B. I like sandwiches, Mum.

C. I don't like ice cream, Mum.

三、小松鼠想回家了，请将画线部分发音与 house 画线部分发音相同的单词连线，送小松鼠回家。



四、根据表格， 选择正确答案。

Amy	☺	☹				
Sarah			☺	☺		☹
John		☺		☺		☺
Mike			☹		☹	☺
Tom	☺	☹		☺		☺

(B) 1. _____ like chicken.

A. Amy and Tom

B. John and Tom

C. Sarah and Mike

(A) 2. Sarah likes _____.

A. hamburgers and chicken

B. cakes and apples

C. hamburgers and apples

(B) 3. _____ children like apples.

A. Two B. Three

C. Four

(A) 4. Mike doesn't like _____.

A. hamburgers or cakes

B. cakes or apples

C. hamburgers or apples

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练(一)

主题素养感悟

主话题 讨论某人想要吃/喝的食物。

知识点 食物类名词

sandwich salad hamburger ice cream tea

重要句式

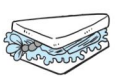
—What would you like to eat?
—I'd like a sandwich, please.

能力素养 能够准确认识常见食物的单词，并能够在实际生活情境中用本课重点句型询问并回答某人想要吃/喝什么。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Amy 和朋友们在谈论他们今天早饭想吃什么。听一听，选出他们早餐的食物。

(B) 1. A.  B. 

(A) 2. A.  B. 

(A) 3. A.  B. 

(A) 4. A.  B. 

二、Sam 这周日回老家看望爷爷奶奶，爷爷奶奶正在做好吃的。请你听问句，选答语。

(C) 1. What would Grandpa like to eat?
A. A sandwich.
B. A hamburger.
C. Some bread.

(C) 2. What would Grandma like to eat?
A. She'd like some juice.
B. She'd like some bread.
C. She'd like some cakes.

(B) 3. What would Sam's uncle like to eat?
A. He'd like some tea.
B. He'd like some salad.
C. He's hungry.

(A) 4. What would Simon like to drink?
A. He'd like some juice.
B. Some tea.
C. Some milk.

三、Chen Jie 和朋友们谈论想要吃或喝的食物。听录音，将谈论内容补充完整。

1. I see some ice cream .
2. —Would you like some salad ?
—No, thanks. I'd like a hamburger .
3. —What's for dinner?
—Beef noodles .
4. —What would she like to eat?
—She'd like some sandwiches .

趣读写

四、Tom 准备开一个 party，为此他要去超市买 party 要用的食材。请根据句子描述和图片提示补全句子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. Sarah would like hamburgers.



2. —Would you like some ice cream?
—Yes, please.



3. I'm hungry. I'd like some salad.



4. I want to buy some sandwiches.



五、妈妈正在询问 Danny 早餐想吃或喝什么，请从方框中选择恰当的句子，补全对话。

Danny: Mum, 1. D

Mum: What would you like to eat?

Danny: 2. A

Mum: OK. 3. E

Danny: Thanks, Mum.

Mum: 4. C What else, dear?

Danny: 5. B A cup of coffee, please.

Mum: Sure. Wait a minute.

A. Some bread and chicken.
B. I'm thirsty. C. You're welcome.
D. I'm hungry.
E. Here is some bread and chicken.

六、今天是周六，Tom 想亲手为家人做一次饭，请根据描述完成任务。

Today is Saturday. Tom will cook for his family. His mother would like some fish and vegetables. His father wants some beef noodles and tomato soup. His grandparents don't like beef. They want some salad and bread. Can you help him make a menu?

（一）根据短文内容，完成今天的菜单。

Today's Menu
fish vegetables; beef noodles; tomato soup; salad; bread

（二）根据短文内容，选择正确的答案。

(A) 1. The word "menu" means _____.
A. 菜单 B. 课表 C. 传单

(A) 2. What would Tom's mother like?
A. She'd like some fish and vegetables.
B. She'd like some vegetable soup.
C. She'd like some tomato soup.

七、根据下面的菜单，Jenny 向大家介绍他们一家人中午在餐厅的点餐情况。

Menu

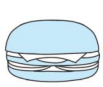
	Food	Drink
Father	eggs, bread	milk
Mother	chicken, rice	soup
Jenny	vegetables, noodles	juice

Hello, everyone! I'm Jenny. Look at the menu. I'd like some vegetables and noodles to eat. And I'd like a cup of juice to drink, too. My father would like some eggs and bread. He wants some milk, too. What about my mother? She would like some chicken, rice and soup.





八、Amy 来到肯德基，店员在询问她想吃点/喝点什么，请根据例句，说句子。

例：
(eat; hamburger)
—What would you like to eat?
—I'd like a hamburger.

1. 
(eat; salad)

2. 

(drink; milk)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's try~Let's talk

一、看图，补全词汇。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. beef noodles
2. chicken sandwich
3. vegetable salad
4. tomato soup

二、单项选择。

(B) 1. What's _____ favourite food ?
A. you B. your C. yours

(B) 2. I like _____ .
A. beefs noodle B. beef noodles
C. beefs noodles

(C) 3. We have _____ today.
A. beef sandwich B. beef sandwichs
C. beef sandwiches

(B) 4. _____ favourite food is fish.
A. She B. Her C. You

(B) 5. Sarah's favourite _____ is milk.
A. fruit B. drink C. vegetable

三、按要求完成句子。

1. I'd like some orange juice .
(改为一般疑问句，并回答)
— Would you like some orange juice?
—Yes, please .

2. My favourite food is noodles. (对画线部分提问)
What's your favourite food?

3. fish have sandwiches we today (.)
(连词成句)
We have fish sandwiches today.

四、核心素养练

中餐和西餐有很多不同点，比如中餐里有更多的蔬菜，而西餐里则有更多的肉；中餐更倾向于烹饪后的蔬菜，西餐则更喜欢新鲜蔬菜。

读对话，帮 Daming 准备好招待客人的食物和饮料。请在需要准备的食物和饮料下打“√”。

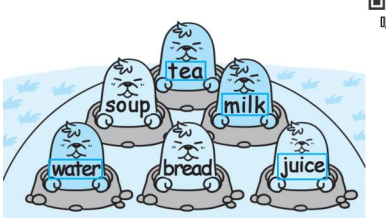
Daming: Hi, friends! Welcome to my home.
Amy: Thank you!
Daming: What would you like for supper?
Amy: I'd like some tomatoes.
Daming: What about you, Tony?
Tony: I'd like some noodles and apples.
Daming: What's your favourite food, Chen Jie?
Chen Jie: I like chicken best.
Daming: What would you like to drink?
Amy&Tony: Milk, please.
Chen Jie: Juice, please.


(√) (√) ( ) ( ) (√)


(√) (√) (√) ( ) ( )

听 五、打地鼠。听对话，根据你所听到的内容圈出要打击的单词地鼠。

听力训练



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn~Look, write and say

☞(点拨见81页)

一、根据图片及首字母提示补全句子。

【图文一致法】

1. I like pizza. It is d**elicious**.



2. The vegetables are h**ealthy**.



3. The peppers are h**ot**.



4. The tomatoes are f**resh**.



5. I like ice cream. It is s**weet**.



二、用所给单词的适当形式填空。

1. **Tom's** (Tom) favourite food is cake.
2. What's **your** (you) favourite drink?
3. What would you like **to eat** (eat)?
4. I'd like some **sandwiches** (sandwich).
5. My parents **had** (have) fish and soup yesterday.

三、仿照例子写句子。

例:  grapes/fresh

—What's your favourite fruit?

—Grapes. They're fresh.

1.  peppers/hot

— **What is your favourite food?**

—Peppers. They're hot.

2.  hamburgers/delicious

— **What is your favourite food?**

— **Hamburgers. They're delicious.**

3.  ice cream/sweet

— **What is your favourite food?**

— **Ice cream. It's sweet.**

4.  salad/healthy

— **What is your favourite food?**

— **Salad. It's healthy.**

四、根据情景对话，选择合适的句子填空。

Mary: Hi, John. 1. **D**

John: Noodles. 2. **A**

They are delicious.

Mary: What's your favourite drink?

John: 3. **E** It's healthy.

4. **C**

Mary: Yes, I do.

John: What's your favourite food?

Mary: I like chicken and rice best.

John: OK. 5. **B**

Mary: Great!

A. I like beef noodles best.
B. We have beef noodles, chicken and rice today.
C. Do you like milk?
D. What's your favourite food?
E. I like milk best.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part B Read and write~Let's wrap it up

☞(点拨见 81 页)

一、写出下列单词的复数形式。【魔法记忆法】

1. a hamburger — two hamburgers
2. noodle — some noodles
3. a sandwich — four sandwiches
4. one box — many boxes
5. one tomato — three tomatoes
6. an onion — five onions
7. a strawberry — some strawberries

二、补全对话。

Amy: Hi, Oliver! 1. B

Oliver: Vegetables. They're healthy. 2. A

Amy: I'd like some noodles. It's my birthday today!

Oliver: 3. D

Amy: Thanks. 4. C

Oliver: Orange juice.

Amy: Me, too. 5. E Let me buy some for us.

Oliver: Thanks.

A. What about you?
B. What would you like to eat?
C. What's your favourite drink?
D. Happy birthday!
E. It's sweet.

三、你想吃什么? 快给 "Little Fatty (小胖)"写封信吧,让他实现你的愿望。请根据中文提示将书信补充完整。

Dear Little Fatty,

My favourite food is 1. chicken (鸡肉). It's very 2. delicious (美味的). I don't like peppers. They're very 3. hot (辣的). I like tomatoes and potatoes. They are 4. healthy (健康的). My favourite drink is 5. watermelon juice (西瓜汁). I also like chocolate. It's 6. sweet (甜的). Can you help me bring them, please?

Thank you very much!

Yours,

× × ×

四、读对话,完成任务。

Sam: What's your favourite food, Amy?

Amy: I like beef, chicken and fish. But I can't eat a lot of meat now. I have to eat vegetables. What about you, Sam?

Sam: I don't like fish. My favourite food is beef noodles. They're tasty. Do you like fruit, Amy?

Amy: Yes. Apples are my favourite fruit. They are fresh and healthy. Do you like apples?

Sam: Yes, but I like oranges best. They are sour and sweet.

(一) 根据对话,判断正 (T) 误 (F)。

(F) 1. Beef is Sam's favourite food.

(T) 2. Amy can't eat a lot of meat now.

(T) 3. Sam's favourite fruit is oranges.

(T) 4. Amy likes apples best, because they are fresh and healthy.

(T) 5. Beef noodles are delicious.

(二) 如果你是厨师,你怎么准备今天中午的菜单。在合适的图下打"√"。


( )


(√)


( )

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时练 7 Part C Story time

课内阅读对点练

一、请根据课本中 "Story time" 的故事完成以下任务。（教材第 31 页）

（一）读故事，为下列图片选择正确的句子。






（ A ）　（ D ）　（ B ）　（ C ）

A. It looks nice! It's healthy, too.

B. Please clean the vegetables.

C. The vegetables are fresh and delicious.

D. Here's some fresh milk.

（二）判断以下句子是否与故事内容相符。相符是 YES，不相符是 NO。

1. Zip is thirsty.

YES　NO

2. Zoom would like some salad.

YES　NO

3. Zip cleans the vegetables.

YES　NO

4. The meaning of "be careful" is "小心".

YES　NO

（三）核心素养练

中西方饮食文化不同，中国人早餐喜欢喝豆浆吃油条，西方人喜欢吃面包喝牛奶。中国人用筷子，西方人用刀叉。中国人喜欢喝汤，而西方人喜欢吃餐后甜点。

请根据上述信息，选择合适的答案。

（ C ）1. The Western people often have _____ for breakfast.

A. chicken and rice

B. eggs and noodles

C. bread and milk

（ C ）2. The Western people eat with _____.

A. chopsticks

B. spoons

C. knives and forks

（ B ）3. The Western people often eat _____ after dinner.

A. soup

B. desserts

C. vegetables

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

Hello, I'm Cindy. Chicken is my favourite food. It's healthy and delicious. My brother likes chicken, too. We often have chicken for dinner on Tuesdays. But my sister doesn't like it. She likes carrots. They are fresh. Apple juice is her favourite drink. It's sweet and healthy. My father's favourite food is beef. It's delicious. My mother likes bananas very much. They are her favourite fruit.

（一）阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

（ T ）1. Cindy's favourite food is chicken.

（ F ）2. Apple juice is Cindy's brother's favourite drink.

（ T ）3. Cindy's mother likes bananas best.

（ F ）4. They often have beef for dinner on Tuesdays.

（二）阅读短文，回答问题。

1. What's Cindy's father's favourite food?

His favourite food is beef.

2. Why is chicken Cindy's favourite food?

Because it's healthy and delicious.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练(二)

(点拨见 81 页)

主题素养感悟

主话题 描述喜欢某种食物的理由。

知识点

相关词汇：fresh delicious hot sweet healthy

重要句式：
—What's your favourite food?
—Ice cream. It's sweet.

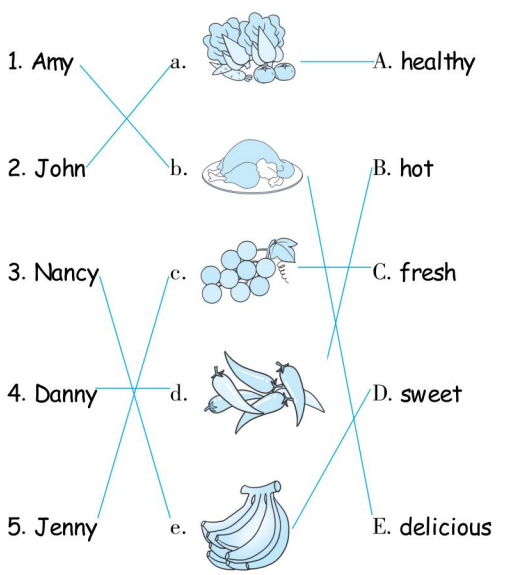
能力素养 能够在情境中询问并回答关于人物最喜欢的食物和饮品，并简单说明理由。

文化素养 坚持绿色饮食，养成健康的饮食习惯。

趣听练

听力训练

一、中秋节就要到了，Danny 在邀请他的朋友们来家里做客。听一听，将他们喜欢的食物及理由连线。



二、Tom 和朋友在谈论他们想吃的食物和想喝的饮料等。听一听，根据谈话内容，选择正确答案。

(A) 1. Who's hungry?

A. Mike's hungry. B. Tom's hungry.

C. Tom's thirsty.

(A) 2. What would Tom like?

A. Tom would like some carrot juice.

B. Tom would like some apple juice.

C. Tom would like some milk.

(B) 3. What's Mike's favourite food?

A. Mike's favourite food is chicken.

B. Mike's favourite food is beef.

C. Mike's favourite food is ice cream.

(C) 4. Why does Mike like beef?

A. The beef is healthy.

B. The beef is sweet.

C. The beef is delicious.

三、Chen Jie 和朋友在谈论喜欢的食物。听一听，补全对话。

Chen Jie: Hi, Mike!

Mike: Hi, Chen Jie!

Chen Jie: What's your favourite 1. food ?

Mike: 2. Sandwiches. They're 3. delicious.

Chen Jie: Would you like some 4. tea ?

Mike: 5. No, thanks . I'd like some 6. milk .What about you?

Chen Jie: Me, too.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

趣读写

四、这是 Danny 和朋友们喜欢的食物表。请根据表格内容判断正（T）误（F）。

	noodles	rice	milk	fish
Danny	☺	☹	☺	☹
Lily	☹	☺	☹	☺
Jenny	☺	☹	☹	☺

(T) 1. Danny and Jenny both like noodles.
(T) 2. Danny doesn't like fish or rice.
(F) 3. Lily likes milk and fish.
(T) 4. Jenny and Lily don't like milk.
(F) 5. They all like fish.

五、Danny 在讲述他最喜欢的偶像。读一读，帮助他完成偶像信息卡。

My name is Danny. I'm eleven years old. My favourite idol is Yao Ming. I know him a lot. He's forty years old. Yao Ming likes basketball best. His favourite food is beef and fish. They are delicious. Tea is his favourite drink. He likes apples and mangoes. They are fresh and healthy. Do you have an idol? Can you tell me about your idol?

Danny's idol
Name: 1. Yao Ming Age: 2. 40
Favourite food: 3. beef and fish
Favourite fruit: 4. apples and mangoes
Favourite drink: 5. tea
Favourite sport: 6. basketball

六、读一读 Danny 的饮食建议，完成任务。

Food is so important to us. It makes us strong and healthy. Many people like fruit and vegetables because (因为) they are tasty and healthy. But many women don't eat meat. They only eat vegetables, such as cabbage, eggplant and so on. Many kids don't like vegetables. They like meat. They eat pork, beef and mutton. Meat is helpful, but too much meat is bad for our health. So remember, food is not single. Eat many kinds of it.

（一）读句子，判断正（T）误（F）。
(T) 1. This text is about food.
(F) 2. Many kids eat too much cabbage.
(F) 3. Meat is bad for our health.
(T) 4. We should eat more vegetables and less meat.
(T) 5. Many kids like to eat meat.

（二）文章中"single" 的意思应该是：(B)
A. 多的 B. 单一的 C. 多样的

七、用英语介绍一下自己最喜欢的食物、饮料和水果，并说说理由。

要求：条理清晰，不少于 5 句话。

Hi, I'm Li Ling. My favourite fruit is apples. They're healthy and sweet. I like vegetables, such as tomatoes, potatoes, carrots and so on. Carrots are my favourite. I don't like peppers. They're too hot. My favourite drink is milk. It's healthy. What about you?

趣说练

八、Danny 在进行食物调查，请根据图片和提示句型，描述他们最喜欢的食物。

口语测评

例：—What's your favourite food?
—My favourite food is chicken. It's delicious.

1.  delicious
2.  sweet

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Recycle 1

阶段复习练 Units 1~3

(点拨见81页)

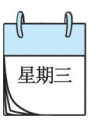
一、选出每组单词画线部分发音不同的一项。

(C) 1. A. know B. snow C. now
(C) 2. A. rainy B. family C. yes
(B) 3. A. green B. head C. see
(B) 4. A. tea B. bread C. meat
(C) 5. A. down B. flower C. yellow

二、看图，补全句子。



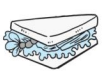
1. —What's Amy like?
—She's hard-working.



2. —What do you have on Wednesdays?
—I have Chinese, English and PE.



3. —Do you often wash your clothes on weekends?
—Yes, I do.



4. —What would you like to eat?
—I'd like a sandwich.



5. —What's your favourite food?
—Hamburgers. They're delicious.

三、单项选择。

(B) 1. Ms Brown is very kind, but she's _____ sometimes.
A. quiet B. strict C. helpful

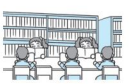
(B) 2. Wu Yifan _____ maths and Chinese _____ Thursday.
A. have; at B. has; on
C. has; in

(C) 3. These _____ my students.
A. am B. is C. are

(C) 4. _____ your art teacher?
A. Who B. What C. Who's

(B) 5. I'd like some _____ to eat.
【逆向思维法】
A. milk B. salad C. hamburger

四、选择与句子意思相符的图片。

A. 
B. 

C. 
D. 
E. 

(D) 1. My science teacher is old and funny.
(E) 2. I'd like some juice. It's sweet.
(A) 3. I often read books with my friends in the library.
(C) 4. My friend Joe is very clever.
(B) 5. Saturday is the last day of the week.

五、根据问句，选择合适的答语。

(B) 1. What's your English teacher like?
(D) 2. Is your father strict?
(C) 3. What's your favourite drink?
(E) 4. What do you have on Tuesdays?
(A) 5. Would you like some coffee?

A. Yes, thank you.
B. She's tall and thin.
C. My favourite drink is juice.
D. No, he's very kind.
E. We have English, maths and music.

六、按要求完成下列句子。

1. I like coffee. (变为否定句)
I don't like coffee.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. Amy's favourite drink is milk.（对画线部分提问）

What's Amy's favourite drink?

3. My maths teacher is strict.（变为一般疑问句）

Is your maths teacher strict?

4. I often wash my clothes after school.（变为一般疑问句）

Do you often wash your clothes after school?

5. We have PE, music and science on Fridays.（对画线部分提问）

What do you have on Fridays?

七、补全对话。

John：What do you have on Fridays?

Lucy：1. D

John: Oh, I love maths. Who's your maths teacher?

Lucy: 2. A

John: What's she like?

Lucy: 3. B

John: Is she strict?

Lucy: 4. C

John: Tomorrow is Saturday. 5. E

Lucy: Yes. I do. See you tomorrow.

A. Miss Green.
B. She's tall and beautiful.
C. No, she's very kind and a little funny.
D. I have maths, English and PE.
E. Do you want to play football with me?

八、根据上下文，选择合适的单词补全短文。

【全书导学号 7217133】

oranges　Thursday　school　noodles　healthy　chicken

Today is 1. Thursday. We have noodles, chicken and vegetable soup for lunch at 2. school. 3. Noodles are my favourite food. 4. Chicken is my favourite food, too. It's 5. healthy. After lunch, we have some 6. oranges. They're my favourite fruit.

九、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Hello, everyone! My name is Linda. I'm 12 years old. I'm a sunny girl. I am tall, thin and a little shy. I like beef. It's my favourite food. My favourite subject is English. English is very interesting. Miss Liu is my English teacher. She's kind and funny. I'm very helpful at home. I often help my mother clean the room on Saturdays. On Sundays I often read books and listen to music.

(T) 1. The phrase"sunny girl" means "阳光女孩".

(F) 2. Linda's favourite food is salad.

(T) 3. Linda's favourite subject is English.

(F) 4. Miss Liu is funny and strict.

(T) 5. Linda is a helpful girl.

十、书面表达。

Amy 想在社交平台上发布一篇招友启事，请你帮她把个人信息（姓名、外貌、爱好、性格、喜欢的食物等）写下来吧。

要求：条理清晰，不少于 5 句话。

Hi, I'm Amy. I'm a funny girl. I have big eyes and a small nose. I like sports. Football is my favourite. I like to eat meat. But now I have to eat more vegetables than meat. They're healthy for my body. Do you want to be my friends?

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 What can you do?

课时练 1 Part A Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见 82 页)

一、图文配对。

A. play football　　B. sing English songs

C. draw pictures　　D. have a party

1. 
(C)

2. 
(A)

3. 
(B)

4. 
(D)

二、读句子，选择正确的图片。

A. 

B. 

C. 

D. 

(D) 1. My sister can't sing songs. But she can dance well.

(C) 2. My brother likes sports. He likes football best.

(B) 3. Tom is a farmer. But his daughter can play the violin.

(A) 4. My friend John can sing English songs.

三、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. We will ___have___ (have) an English party tomorrow.

2. I can ___do___ (do) some kung fu.

3. These ___children___ (child) can wash ___their___ (they) clothes.

4. Can you sing and ___dance___ (dance)?

四、情景交际。

(B) 1. 当你想问对方会做什么时，应说：

A. What do you do?

B. What can you do?

(A) 2. 你想介绍自己会功夫时，你应说：

A. I can do some kung fu.

B. I can sing English songs.

五、选择正确的句子补全对话。

Amy: 1. ___E___

John: Great!

Amy: 2. ___D___

John: I can sing English songs. 3. ___B___

Amy: I can dance. 4. ___C___

John: She can draw cartoons. 5. ___A___

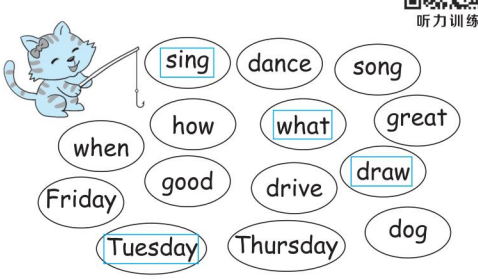
Amy: He can play the violin.

John: Wonderful!

A. What can Tom do?
B. How about you, Amy?
C. What can Lucy do?
D. What can you do, John?
E. We'll have a party this weekend.

听 六、小猫钓鱼。小猫想钓出听力中出现的单词，请帮它找出来。

听力训练



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn~Do a survey

(点拨见 82 页)

一、看图补全句子。



1. Alice can __dance__.



2. Lisa can __sing English songs__.



3. My brother can __draw cartoons__.



4. John can __do some kung fu__.



5. Zhang Peng can __play the *pipa*__.

二、选词填空。

How What Who

1. — __What__ can you do?
—I can do some kung fu.
2. — __Who__ can play the violin?
—Jenny.
3. I can play basketball. __How/What__ about you?

三、给下列句子选择对应的答语。

A. They can fly in the sky.
B. Amy.
C. I can use the chopsticks.
D. He can draw cartoons.
E. She can play the pipa .

(C) 1. What can you do?
(E) 2. What can your sister do for the party?
(D) 3. What can Mike do?
(B) 4. Who can speak English?
(A) 5. What can the birds do?

四、根据图片写问句或答语。



1. —What can you do?
— __I can play football.__
2. —What can Han Mei do?
— __She can dance.__



3. — __What can you do?__
—I can read storybooks.
4. — __Who can sing songs?__
—Mike.

五、读对话，完成下面表格。

Miss White: Hello, everyone! We'll have a party next Friday.
Children: Great!
Miss White: What can you do?
Amy: I can dance.
Chen Jie: I can do kung fu.
Mike: I can play the *pipa* .
John: I can draw some pictures.
Zhang Peng: I can play the piano.
Miss White: Wow! You're great!

Name	Do
Zhang Peng	1. __play the piano__
Amy	2. __dance__
John	draw some pictures
Chen Jie	3. __do kung fu__
Mike	4. __play the *pipa*__

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

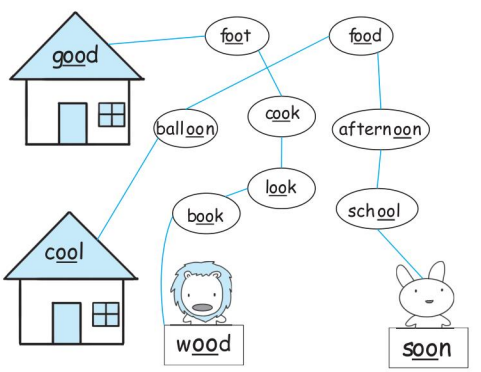
(点拨见 82 页)

一、选出下列每组单词画线部分发音不同的一项。

(B) 1. A. noodles B. good C. cool
(B) 2. A. too B. football C. food
(A) 3. A. book B. tooth C. school
(A) 4. A. goose B. look C. good
(C) 5. A. afternoon B. kangaroo C. wood

二、小动物迷路了，快帮它们找到自己的家吧。

(将画线部分发音相同的单词连起来)



三、单项选择。

(C) 1. Alice can play _____ pipa.
A. a B. / C. the
(B) 2. John can play _____ football.
A. a B. / C. the
(B) 3. We'll have _____ English party next month.
A. a B. an C. /
(A) 4. —_____ can play with the yo-yo?
—John.
A. Who B. What C. Where

四、连词成句。(注意句首单词首字母大写)

1. an party we'll next have English Friday (.)
We'll have an English party next Friday.
2. do what for can you party the (?)
What can you do for the party?
3. can the erhu my play sister (.)
My sister can play the *erhu*.

五、补全对话。

Teacher: Children, today is Chen Jie's birthday. 1. C
Joe: I can draw a picture.
Teacher: What about you, Alice?
Alice: 2. B
Teacher: 3. A
Joe: We can make a birthday cake together.
Alice: 4. D

A. What else can you do?
B. I can make a birthday card for her.
C. What can you do for the birthday party?
D. Good idea!

六、阅读短文，判断正(T)误(F)。

Hello! I'm Jenny. I have a new friend. He is friendly and funny. He can speak English, Chinese and Japanese. We often learn from each other. He can do some kung fu and dance. He can play ping-pong. I can play ping-pong, too. We often play it together after school. I can swim, but he can't swim! Who's he? Can you guess? Let me tell you. He is Robin, the robot!

(T) 1. Jenny can play ping-pong and swim.
(T) 2. Jenny's new friend is a robot.
(F) 3. Robin can't speak Chinese.
(T) 4. Robin is helpful.
(F) 5. The phrase "each other" means "每一个人".

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练（一）

主题素养感悟

- **主话题** 讨论人物的课余文化活动。
- **知识点**
  - 活动词汇：dance　sing English songs　do kung fu　play the pipa　draw cartoons
  - 重要句式：—What can you do? —I can draw cartoons.
- **能力素养** 能够准确认识常见的课余文化活动类词组，并能够在情境中询问并回答关于人物课余文化活动的问题。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Jenny 和 Danny 在谈论他们聚会的活动安排。听一听，按听到的顺序给图片排序。


（ 4 ）


（ 1 ）


（ 6 ）

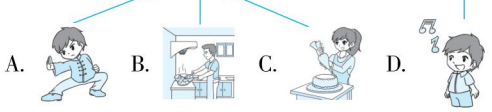

（ 5 ）


（ 2 ）


（ 3 ）

二、Sam 一家这周日要回老家为爷爷过生日，听听他们分别为爷爷准备了什么神秘礼物，将人物与其对应的神秘礼物连线。

1. mother　2. father　3. Simon　4. Sam



三、Chen Jie 在向朋友们介绍她和家人的娱乐活动。听录音，选出与所听内容相符的句子。

（ B ）1. A. Chen Jie can cook.
B. Chen Jie can swim.
C. Chen Jie can't swim, but she can dance.

（ B ）2. A. Chen Jie's father can play football.
B. Chen Jie's father can play basketball.
C. Chen Jie's father can play ping-pong.

（ B ）3. A. Chen Jie's grandma can sing.
B. Chen Jie's grandma can dance.
C. Chen Jie's grandma can draw cartoons.

趣读写

四、Jenny 用推测的方式告诉大家她的同学们擅长的课外活动。读一读，帮 Jenny 补全句子。

1. Amy: It is a sport. The ball is black and white. Leonardo is the super star about it.
Amy can __play football__.

2. John: It is a sport. The ball is round. It's white or orange. Deng Yaping plays it very well.
John can __play ping-pong__.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. Sarah: It is a Chinese musical instrument (乐器). It looks like a pear. It has four or five strings (弦). It can play nice music. Sarah can play the *pipa*.

4. Mike: It is a kind of exercise in China. It's good for our health. It's very famous in the world. Li Lianjie does it very well. Mike can do Chinese kung fu.

五、Tom 新学期认识了新同学。请根据表格判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。

	Amy	Mike	John
dance	☺		
draw cartoons		☺	☺
play the pipa	☺		
clean the classroom	☺	☺	☺

(T) 1. Amy can dance and play the pipa.

(F) 2. Mike can dance and draw cartoons.

(F) 3. John can play the pipa and clean the classroom.

(T) 4. They can all clean the classroom.

六、下面是 John 与新朋友关于课余生活的谈话，请根据谈话内容，完成任务。

John: What can you do, Alice?

Alice: I can draw cartoons and play the drums.

John: What about you, Chen Jie?

Chen Jie: I can play football and sing songs.

John: Who can sing songs too?

Chen Jie: Sarah can sing English songs. She can dance, too.

John: Can you sing, Amy?

Amy: Yes, I can. But I can't dance. I can play the pipa.

John: Wonderful!

1. 根据谈话内容，在下表中勾出每个同学的课余活动。

	Amy	Alice	Chen Jie	Sarah
sing songs	√		√	√
dance				√
draw cartoons		√		
play the drums		√		
play football			√	
play the pipa	√			

2. The phrase "play the drums" means B.

A. 拉二胡　　B. 打鼓　　C. 吹笛子

七、假如你是 Jim，根据下面的图片，简单介绍一下你的课余活动。



Hello, I'm Jim. I'm happy on the weekend. I can swim. I can run. I can play football with my friend. Then I can read books. What can you do on the weekend?

趣说练

八、请根据所给图片，仿照例子描述他们的课余文化生活。

口语测评

例：



(play ping-pong)

—What can you do?

—I can play ping-pong.

1. 

(fly kites)

2. 

(play the violin)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's try~Let's talk

☞(点拨见 82 页)

一、 给下列图片选择正确的英文表达。

A. play ping-pong B. speak English C. cook
D. listen to music E. make a puppet

1.  (C)

2.  (D)

3.  (A)

4.  (E)

5. 

(B)

二、单项选择。

(B) 1. _____ learn some kung fu.
A. We're B. We'll C. He's

(B) 2. —_____ can sing Chinese songs?
—Jenny!
A. What B. Who C. Where

(B) 3. Can you do _____ kung fu?
【全书导学号 7217133】
A. an B. any C. a

(A) 4. What _____ the lions do?
A. can B. am C. is

(B) 5. Can he _____ a puppet?
A. making B. make C. made

三、按要求完成下列句子。

1. I can make the bed.(对画线部分进行提问)
What can you do?

2. Amy can draw some pictures.(变为一般疑问句)
Can Amy draw any pictures?

3. Can the dog swim?(作肯定回答)
Yes, it can.

4. Robin can play the violin.(变为否定句)
Robin can't play the violin.

5. some learn today songs we'll (.)(连词成句)
We'll learn some songs today.

四、根据表格信息完成句子。

				
Tom	√		√	√
Danny		√		
Peter			√	
Amy			√	√

1. —Who can speak English?
— Danny. /Danny can speak English.

2. — Can Peter swim ?
—Yes, he can.

3. Amy can't play basketball.

4. —What can Tom and Amy do?
—They can swim and cook .

听 五、听录音,给下列图片排序。

听力训练

 (1)

 (3)

 (5)

 (2)



(4)

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn~Write and say

一、选出不同类的单词。

(B) 1. A. sing　　B. song　　C. make

(C) 2. A. puppet　　B. robot　　C. cool

(C) 3. A. read　　B. play　　C. basketball

(B) 4. A. speak　　B. any　　C. swim

二、根据图片，完成对话。

1. —Can you __cook__?
—Yes, I can.



2. —Can you __swim__?
—No, I can't.



3. —Can you __play basketball__?
—Yes, I can.



4. —Can you __play ping-pong__?
—No, I can't.



三、看图，仿照例子写句子。（☺表示会，☹表示不会）

例： ☹ I can't wash clothes.

1.  ☺ __I can speak English.__

2.  ☹ __I can't do any kung fu.__

四、选择正确的句子补全对话。

Amy: Mike, I can do many things.
Mike: Really? 1. __D__
Amy: I can dance.
Mike: 2. __E__
Amy: Yes, I can.
Mike: Can you play the drums?
Amy: 3. __B__
Mike: Can you play the piano?
Amy: No, I can't. 4. __C__
Mike: 5. __A__

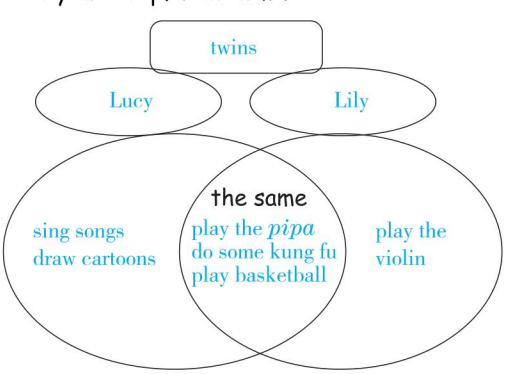
A. Great!
B. Yes, I can.
C. But I can make a puppet.
D. What can you do?
E. Can you sing English songs?

五、核心素养练

同学们，在英语学习中，我们可以利用思维导图梳理知识。这会让我们的思路更加清晰，让我们的学习更有条理和逻辑。

请阅读短文，试着绘制以下短文的思维导图。

Lucy and Lily are twins. They look the same. They can play the pipa , do some kung fu and play basketball together. But they are also different. Lucy can't play the violin, but she can sing songs and d raw cartoons. Lily can't sing songs, but she can play the violin. They are helpful at home.



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part B Read and write~Let's wrap it up

☞(点拨见 82 页)

一、用"the" 或 "/" 填空。

1. I can play ___the___ erhu.
2. He can play ___/___ ping-pong.
3. My sister can play ___the___ pipa.
4. Zhang Peng can play ___/___ football.
5. Jenny can play ___the___ piano.
6. Sarah can't play ___/___ basketball.

二、根据图片提示，写出对应的问句或答语。



1. —What can your mother do?
   — ___She can cook.___



2. — ___Can he play football?___
   —Yes, he can.



3. —What can your brother do?
   — ___He can swim.___



4. — ___Can she speak English?___
   —Yes, she can.

三、补全对话。

Amy: What a nice day, Jenny! 1. ___E___
Jenny: Wait a moment! Let me send an email to my new pen pal in Australia.
Amy: OK! 2. ___B___
Jenny: Yes, he can. 3. ___C___
Amy: Great. What can you do for the picnic?
Jenny: 4. ___A___ and make fish soup.
Amy: I can pick sticks.
Jenny: Wonderful! 5. ___D___

A. I can go fishing
B. Can he speak Chinese?
C. He can speak Japanese, too.
D. What a happy day!
E. Let's have a picnic together!

四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. Jenny can play the piano. (改为否定句)
   ___Jenny can't play the piano.___
2. Tony can speak Chinese. (对画线部分进行提问)
   ___What can Tony do?___
3. I can play basketball. I can play football. (合为一句)
   ___I can play basketball and football.___

五、阅读短文，选择正确答案。

Today Sarah interviews Mike's family for the school newspaper.

They are from England. They have a colourful life. Mike's mother can sing and dance. His father can play ping-pong with him. They also fly kites together. Mike can swim and play football with his sister Jenny. He is also a basketball fan. He likes Yao Ming best. His sister is only 7 years old. But she can speak Chinese well. She's very clever.

(B) 1. How many people are there in Mike's family?
A. Three. B. Four. C. Five.

(C) 2. Who can speak Chinese well?
A. Mike. B. Mike's father.
C. Mike's sister.

(C) 3. What can Mike's father do?
A. He can play ping-pong.
B. He can fly kites.
C. Both A and B.

(C) 4. What does "colourful" mean?
【全书导学号 7217133】
A. 暗淡的 B. 单调的
C. 丰富多彩的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多习资料

课时练 7 Part C Story time

（点拨见 115 页）

课内阅读对点练

一、请根据课本中 "Story time" 的故事完成以下任务。（教材第 45 页）

（一）判断以下句子是否与故事内容相符。相符写 T，不相符写 F。

(F) 1. The rat is hungry.

(T) 2. The rat can sing.

(F) 3. The rat can't dance.

(T) 4. The meaning of "silly" in the text is "傻".

(F) 5. The rat can't swim actually.

（二）根据故事内容回答问题。

1. Who's hungry?

The snake is hungry.

2. What can the rat do?

He can sing, dance and swim .

3. Can the rat swim?

Yes, he can.

4. Who's silly?

The snake is silly.

5. Is the rat safe at last?

Yes, he is.

（三）各国文化知多少。（选择恰当的一项）

(C) 1. The famous sport of China is _____.

A. football B. basketball

C. ping-pong

(A) 2. The _____ of China is very special in the world.

A. kung fu B. swimming

C. diving

(C) 3. The famous sport(s) of Spain is (are) _____.

A. bullfighting（斗牛表演）

B. football C. Both A and B.

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

I'm Jenny. I'm an American girl. I can sing Chinese and English songs. I have four good friends. They are Amy, Chen Jie, Wu Yifan and Zhang Peng. Amy is a warm girl. She can play the piano. Chen Jie is a Chinese girl. She can cook beef noodles. Wu Yifan is a clever boy. He's tall and strong. He can draw cartoons, but he can't swim. Zhang Peng is a good boy. He can cook delicious food. And he can dance. He can dance Jazz well.

（一）阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

(F) 1. Jenny is from England.

(F) 2. Jenny has five good friends.

(F) 3. Wu Yifan can cook noodles, but he can't swim.

(F) 4. Chen Jie is a tall girl.

(T) 5. Zhang Peng can dance Jazz well.

（二）根据五位同学会做的事，把他们的名字写在相应的括号里。

1.  (Zhang Peng)

2.  (Chen Jie)

3.  (Jenny)

4.  (Amy)

5.  (Wu Yifan)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练（二）

主题素养感悟

- **主话题** 能够简单描述自己有哪些特长，会做哪些事。
- **知识点** 与人物特长相关的词汇：swim　speak English　cook　play basketball　play ping-pong
  重要句式：—Can you swim? —Yes, I can. I can do some kung fu, too!
- **能力素养** 能够在情境中询问对方是否会做某事并回答。
- **文化素养** 能够了解琵琶、武术、乒乓球等中国特色文娱活动；积极参加文娱活动，丰富课余生活。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Zip 与 Zoom 在谈论自己的能力适合当什么老师。听一听，将 Zip 与 Zoom 的能力装在相应的篮子里，并在横线上写出他们适合当哪科老师。

A. dance　B. play football
C. do kung fu　D. sing songs
E. play basketball　F. play the pipa

1. 

2. 

A　D　F; a music teacher　　B　C　E; a PE teacher

二、听一听，判断下面人物会做的事情的图片与描述是否一致。一致写 T，不一致写 F。

(F) 1. 

(T) 2. 

(T) 3. 

(F) 4. 

(T) 5. 

三、同学们正在询问 Tom 及他的家人有哪些能力，会做什么事情。听一听问句，选出正确的答语。

(C) 1. A. Tom can dance for his grandma.
B. She is kind.
C. My mother can tell stories.

(B) 2. A. Yes, I can.　B. No, he can't.
C. Yes, I do.

(A) 3. A. My father.
B. I can do kung fu.
C. I like sports.

趣读写

四、读一读下面关于“班级小达人”特长评选活动的对话，选择正确的选项将其补全。

Teacher: Hi, children! Are you ready for the talent show（达人秀）?
Children:Yes.
Teacher:1. ___C___
Mike:I can sing and dance.
Teacher:Can you speak English, Jenny?
Jenny:2. ___A___ But only a little.
Teacher:Great! 3. ___D___
Lisa:I can play the drums. 4. ___B___

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Mike:Wonderful!

Lisa:Thank you. 5. ___E___

Teacher:Good idea.

A. Yes, I can.
B. And I can play the erhu , too.
C. What can you do?
D. How about you, Lisa?
E. We can make a band (乐队).

五、读一读 Danny 七月的活动安排，选择正确的答案。

Kite Club Date: 5 July Place: Renmin Park Price: $ 10 * bring your kite	Swimming Day Date: 11 July Place: Beihai Park Price: $ 15 * bring a towel
Ride a Bike Date: 18 July Place: Liuling Park Price: $ 15 * bring a helmet	Walking Team Date: 25 July Place: Fun Park Price: $ 20 * bring a hat

(C) 1. Danny wants to fly kites. He can go to _____.
A. Beihai Park B. Fun Park
C. Renmin Park

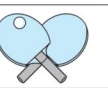
(A) 2. Danny wants to swim. How much does he need to pay?
A. $ 15. B. $ 10.
C. $ 20.

(C) 3. What should Danny bring if he wants to ride a bike?
A. A towel. B. A kite.
C. A helmet.

(C) 4. Danny goes to the Liuling Park. He can _____ there.
A. fly a kite B. swim
C. ride a bike

(C) 5. Danny likes to walk. He can join "_____".
A. Kite Club B. Swimming Day
C. Walking Team

六、请你根据提示图表介绍一下你的朋友们。

	can	can't
John		
Amy		
Mike		

I have three new friends this term. John can't play football, but he can play ping-pong. Amy can't play the piano, but she can play the *pipa*. Mike can't speak English, but he can swim.

趣说练

七、生活中的英语。根据情景说英语句子。

口语测评

1. Bill 在做自我介绍时，想表达自己会踢足球但不会游泳，他应该怎样说？
2. John 是学校的体育老师，他想问同学们是否会些功夫，他会怎样问呢？
3. 学校文娱俱乐部招收成员，老师想知道前来报名的学生会什么，他应该怎样问？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 There is a big bed

课时练 1 Part A Let's try~Let's talk

☞(点拨见 115 页)

一、看图，判断下列句子是否正确。正确的写“T”，错误的写“F”。



(T) 1. There is a bed in the bedroom.

(F) 2. There is a car under the bed.

(F) 3. There is a ball near the bed.

(T) 4. There is a lamp on the bedside table（床头柜）.

(T) 5. There is a picture on the wall.

二、单项选择。

(B) 1. I like _____ bedroom.

A. you B. my C. me

(B) 2. There _____ a computer on the table.

A. am B. is C. are

(C) 3. Your pictures _____ really nice.

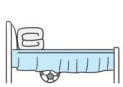
A. am B. is C. are

(B) 4. He _____ cool.

A. look B. looks C. is look

三、核心素养练

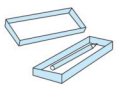
英语中，方位介词能够清楚地表达物品位置。请你根据所学及具体图片，用恰当的方位介词补全句子。

1. 

There is a foot ball **under** the bed.

2. 

There is a pear **on** the table.

3. 

There is a pencil **in** the box.

4. 

There is a sofa **near** the window.

四、根据图片内容，补全对话。



Tom: Welcome to my home. I 1. **have** a new room now.

John: Really? 2. **What's** in your room?

Tom: There 3. **is** a bed, a desk and a chair. 4. **There** is a fan and a computer.

John: Great!

Tom: Please come in!

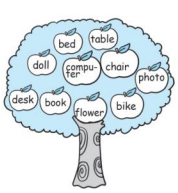
John: Oh, your room is really untidy（不整洁的）.

Tom: Sorry, let me tidy it up.

John: It's 5. **tidy** now.

听 五、摘果子。将听到的单词写在横线上。

听力训练



bed; photo; computer; table; desk

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn~Let's play

(点拨见 115 页)

一、找出下列每组单词中不同类的一项。

(A) 1. A. bike B. like C. love

(C) 2. A. water B. tea C. bottle

(B) 3. A. picture B. nice C. photo

(B) 4. A. TV B. room C. computer

(A) 5. A. onion B. nice C. cool

二、看图，补全句子。

1. —Where is the bike ?
—It's near the chair.



2. —Is this your clock ?
—Yes, it's mine.



3. —Who's this boy in the photo?
—He's Zhang Peng.



4. —Where is the plant ?
—It's under the desk.



5. There's a water bottle in the schoolbag.



三、选择正确的句子，补全对话。

【全书导学号 7217133】

John: Do you have a new classroom this year?

Amy: 1. B

John: Really? 2. D

Amy: There is a new computer, many new desks and chairs.

John: What's on the teacher's desk?

Amy: 3. C

John: Do you like your classroom?

Amy: 4. A

A. Yes, I like it very much.
B. Yes, I do.
C. There is a plant and some notebooks.
D. What's in your classroom?

四、按要求完成下列句子。

1. a is plant there in room my (.)
(连词成句)
There is a plant in my room.

2. What's in the kitchen? (用一张桌子和一把椅子回答)
There is a table and a chair in the kitchen.

3. There is a computer in my classroom. (对画线部分进行提问)
What's in your classroom?

4. books lamp a is there desk on the and (.) (连词成句)
There is a lamp and books on the desk.

五、阅读短文，根据短文内容填空。

【寻读关键词法】

This is a picture of my room. There is a new blue bed in my room. It's near the window. It's nice and comfortable. There is a table near my bed. There is a lamp on the table. My bag is near the chair on the floor. My teddy bear is under the bed. It's very cute. I think my room is clean. Do you think so?

1. There is a bed in my room. It's blue.
2. There is a lamp on the table.
3. There is a teddy bear under the bed.
4. There is a table near the bed.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

☞(点拨见 115 页)

一、选出下列每组画线部分发音不同的一项，写到题前的括号内。

(C) 1. A. say　　B. play　　C. said

(B) 2. A. may　　B. she　　C. wait

(B) 3. A. paint　　B. week　　C. plane

(C) 4. A. Monday　　B. rainbow　　C. he

(C) 5. A. snake　　B. rain　　C. says

二、从文中找出含有与例词画线部分相同读音的单词，将其写在横线上。【分类记忆法】

Today is a sunny day. We can play all the way. We can paint a rainbow on the ground. We can play "Simon says". We can make a birthday cake. Then we wait for a bus. We'll go home.

Tuesday: Today; day; play; way; paint; rainbow; make; birthday; cake; wait

三、情景选择。

(C) 1. 你的朋友们来到你的房间，你这样欢迎他们：

A. Welcome to my school!

B. Welcome to Beijing!

C. Welcome to my room!

(C) 2. 你对朋友说他的房间很漂亮：

A. Your room is very big.

B. Your room is really small.

C. Your room is really nice.

(B) 3. 你说有一个男孩在树下：

A. There's a boy in the tree.

B. There's a boy under the tree.

C. There's a boy behind the tree.

(C) 4. 你叫朋友们玩电脑游戏：

A. Let's go to school!

B. Let's paint!

C. Let's play computer games!

四、将下列句子重新排序，组成一段完整的对话。

(1) Hello, I have my own room now.

(7) What's on the desk?

(2) Really? What's in your room?

(3) There is a bed, a desk, a chair and a bike in my room.

(4) A bike? Where is it?

(5) It's on the wall behind the door.

(6) Cool!

(8) It's an iPad. I often listen to music with it.

五、阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

This is my new bedroom. It's small, but nice and tidy. The walls are blue. I like the sea, so I like blue. My bed is small, but it's very clean. It's white. I have many wonderful dreams here. There is a beautiful plant on the table. I have a chair. It's white, too. There is a clock on the wall. It looks like a rabbit. It's lovely. My pencils and books are on the table. I have a teddy bear. It's on the bed.

(B) 1. My bedroom is _____.

A. small and untidy

B. small but nice

C. nice but big

(B) 2. What colour are the walls?

A. White.　　B. Blue.　　C. Orange.

(C) 3. There is a _____ on the table.

A. bed　　B. dream　　C. plant

(A) 4. "Wonderful dreams" means" _____".

A. 美妙的梦　　B. 噩梦　　C. 梦

(B) 5. The title of the text is " _____" .

A. My house　　B. My bedroom

C. My life

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练(一)

(点拨见 115 页)

主题素养感悟

主话题 简单描述物品的名称、位置及数量。

知识点

物品名称	方位介词	重要句式
clock plant bottle water bottle bike photo	in on under	There is a big bed/... in my room. My computer is here on the desk.

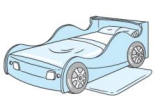
能力素养 能够准确描述常见物品的名称、位置，并能够熟练运用“There is...in/on...”句型描述物品的陈设情况。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Jenny 和 Danny 在谈论他们的新房间，听一听，选出各个物品的位置吧！

(A) 1. A.  B. 

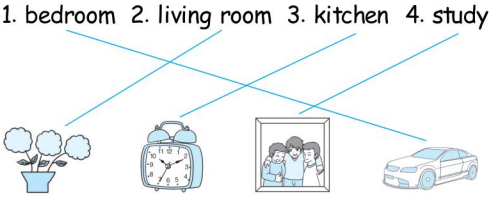
(A) 2. A.  B. 

(B) 3. A.  B. 

(B) 4. A.  B. 

二、Sam 这周日搬新家了，他邀请朋友来家里参观，请根据他们的聊天内容，将物品与相应房间连线。

1. bedroom 2. living room 3. kitchen 4. study



A B C D

三、Chen Jie 在向朋友们介绍她的客厅。听一听，找出和 Chen Jie 的介绍内容相符的一项。

(B) 1. A. There is a TV on the wall.
B. There is a TV on the table.
C. There is a TV above the table.

(B) 2. A. There is a big sofa in the living room.
B. The sofa is in front of the TV.
C. There is a sofa behind the TV.

(C) 3. A. The wall is blue and orange.
B. The wall is orange.
C. The wall is blue and white.

趣读写

四、Jenny 在用猜谜的方式告诉大家关于自己家人的房间的事情，请你读一读，找到房间的主人吧。(将序号填在相应图片下方的横线上)



3



4

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



2



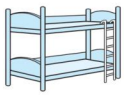
1

1. My parents' bedroom is big. There is a big bed in it. It's blue. There is a photo on the wall. There is a guitar on the wall, too. Sometimes my father plays the guitar for us. Can you find it?
2. My brother's room is cool. There are three photos of Spiderman. He likes him very much.
3. My room is small, but nice. The bed is near the window. There is a computer on the desk.
4. My sister's room is nice. There's a bed, a table and a sofa in it. The lamp is on the bedside table. The sofa is near the bedside table.

五、下面是 John 给远方朋友写的邮件，阅读邮件，完成题目。

An email from 5. B
From: John@urfriend.cn
To: Steven@urfriend.cn
Dear 6. A , Hello! I'm John. Long time no see. Do you miss me? I miss you very much. This term I have a new room. It's small, but nice. There is a new bed in my room. The bed is on top, and the desk is under the bed. There are some books on the desk. I often read books and do my homework on it. Where's the water bottle? It's beside the desk. There are lots of flowers near the window. How beautiful! I like my room very much. Do you like it? Write to me soon. 7. B

(C) 1. Which one is John's bed?

A.  B. 

C. 

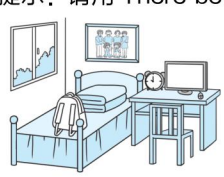
(A) 2. Where are the books?
A. On the desk. B. Above the bed.
C. Near the window.

(A) 3. Are there any flowers in the room?
A. Yes, there are.
B. No, there aren't.
C. Yes, there is.

(C) 4. Where is the water bottle?
A. On the desk.
B. Beside the chair.
C. Beside the desk.

根据邮件内容，在 5. 6. 7. 处填入合适的人物。
A. Steven B. John

六、根据下面的图片，简单介绍一下 Jenny 的新房间。提示：请用 There be...句型等。



Look at this new room. It's Jenny's. It's clean and nice. There is a bed, a desk and a chair in the room. There is a computer and a clock on the desk. Her schoolbag is on the bed. There is a picture of her family on the wall. Do you like her room?

趣说练

七、请用正确的语音语调说出下列描述 Amy 房间里的物品的句子。

口语测评

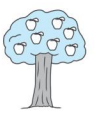
1. There is a table near the window.
2. There is a computer on the table.
3. There is a dog in the box.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见116页)

一、看图，判断下列句子正（T）误（F）。

1.  2.  3. 

(F) 1. There are some flowers in front of the house.

(T) 2. There are some animals in the zoo.

(T) 3. There are some apples on the tree.

二、单项选择。

(C) 1. There are _____ animals in the zoo.

A. lot of B. a lot C. lots of

(C) 2. There are _____ books. 【排除法】

A. any B. much C. many

(C) 3. There is a garden in front of _____ house.

A. they B. them C. their

(B) 4. My father can draw very _____.

A. good B. well C. fine

(B) 5. They are my _____ dogs.

A. sisters B. brother's C. fathers'

三、核心素养练

在英语 there be 句型中，be 动词的单复数形式由后面紧挨的名词的单复数决定。

根据以上规则，用 be 动词的不同形式补全句子。

1. There is a bed, a table and a computer in the room.
2. There are lots of flowers in the garden.
3. There is some bread on the table.
4. There is a white car under the tree.
5. There are many books on the bookshelf.

四、选择正确的选项补全对话。

Lily: 1. D

Sarah: Wow! It's so big and nice.

Lily: Thanks. There is a living room, a kitchen, a study, two bathrooms and three bedrooms.

Sarah: 2. E

Lily: There is a bed. 3. C

Sarah: 4. B

Lily: They are on the bookshelf.

Sarah: Do you often read books?

Lily: 5. A

A. Yes, I do.
B. Where are the books?
C. There are many books, too.
D. Welcome to my home!
E. What's in your bedroom?

听 五、听录音，给下列图片排序。

听力训练



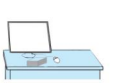
(2)



(3)



(1)

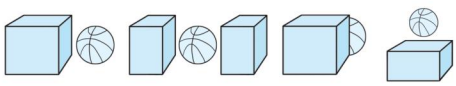


(4)

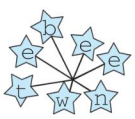
关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn~Find and say

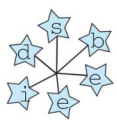
一、根据所给字母在横线上写单词，并将序号填入相应图片下的括号内。



1. (B) 2. (A) 3. (C) 4. (D)

A. 

between

B. 

beside

C. 

behind

D. 

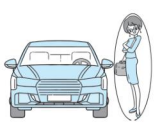
above

二、仿照例句，写句子。

例1：—Where is the dog?
—It's in front of the ball.



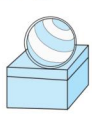
1. —Where is the woman?
—She's beside the car.



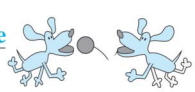
2. —Where is the girl?
—She's between the bags.



例2：There is a ball on the box.



3. There is a ball between the dogs.



4. There are two boys in front of the car.



三、给下列句子排序。

(2) Oh, really? What's in it?
(1) Hi, Amy. I have a new classroom.
(3) There are many new desks and new chairs.
(7) Great!
(6) Yes, there is.
(5) Is there a computer in it?
(4) There are many books, too.

四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. The bike is beside the door.（对画线部分提问）
Where is the bike?

2. in what front is of garden the (?)（连词成句）
What is in front of the garden?

3. There is a ball under the desk.（变复数句子）
There are balls under the desk.

4. There is a doll on the bed.（变一般疑问句）
Is there a doll on the bed?

五、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

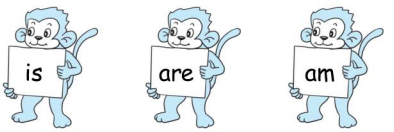
Look, this is my bedroom. It's big and clean. There is a big car in my room. Is it cool? The car is my bed. It's red. There's a yellow ball near the bed. There is a table near the window. My schoolbag and computer are on the table. There's a picture above the table. There are two small plants on the table, too. I like my room very much!

(T) 1. The bed looks like a car.
(F) 2. The ball is under the bed.
(F) 3. The plants are under the table.
(F) 4. The picture is above the bed.
(T) 5. There is a computer on the table.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part B Read and write~Let's wrap it up

一、用所给单词填空。



Hello! I ___am___ Chen Jie. This ___is___ my living room. There ___is___ a sofa, a TV and a fridge in it. There ___are___ some flowers beside the sofa. There ___are___ some photos on the wall. There ___are___ some fish in the fish-bowl. How beautiful!

二、根据图片写词汇，补全短文。

I have a cute cat. It likes to play with the ball. Look, the cat is 1. ___beside___  the ball. Now, where is it? Is it 2. ___under___

 the ball? No. Is it 3. ___behind___

 the ball? No, it's 4. ___above___

 the ball. Now it's 5. ___in front of___

 the ball. Wow, it's 6. ___between___

 the balls. The cat is so cute. I like it very much. Do you like it?

三、仔细观察图片，判断句子正（T）误（F）。



(T) 1. One clock is above the bed.

(T) 2. There is a clock, a plant and a telephone on the bedside tables.

(F) 3. There are some pictures on the bed.

四、阅读短文，完成任务。

My name is Amy. This is a picture of my home. Please look at my home! There are three bedrooms, two bathrooms, a study, a living room and a kitchen. I have my own room. It's small, but warm. There is a small pink bed in it. There is a white clock above the bed. There is a desk and a chair beside the bed. There is a plant in my room. Above the bed, there is a photo of me. I love my room very much!

（一）根据短文内容填空，完成下列句子。

1. There are ___eight___ rooms in Amy's home.
2. Amy's room is ___small but warm___.
3. There is a photo of ___Amy___ above the bed.

（二）圈出 Amy 的家。

A.
- Two bedrooms
- Two bathrooms
- A kitchen
- A study
- A living room

B.
- Three bedrooms
- Two bathrooms
- A kitchen
- A study
- A living room

C.
- Two bedrooms
- A bathroom
- A kitchen
- A study
- A living room

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 7 Part C Story time

课内阅读对点练

一、请根据课本中"Story time"的故事完成以下任务。（教材第 55 页）

（一）判断以下句子是否与故事内容相符。相符圈 YES，不相符圈 NO。

1. There is a can in the river.

YES NO

2. A naughty bear kicks the can to its home.

YES NO

3. The monkey can help the can.

YES NO

4. The meaning of "sweet home" is "甜蜜的家".

YES NO

5. At last, Zoom helps the can go home.

YES NO

（二）核心素养练

为了减少污染，改善人们的生活环境，我们将垃圾分为四类：可回收物、有害垃圾、厨余垃圾和其他垃圾。

请根据生活经验，完成下列任务。

(C) 1. How many kinds of waste bins do we have?

A. Two. B. Three. C. Four.

2. 为不同的垃圾选择正确颜色的垃圾桶。

(B) (1) 

A. 

(A) (2) 

B. 

(D) (3) 

C. 

(C) (4) 

D. 

拓展阅读提升练

二、阅读短文，完成任务。

Hi, everyone! I live in a new flat（公寓）with my parents now. There is a new air conditioner（空调）, a new sofa, a TV and a bright light in the living room. There is a big dining table and a closet in the kitchen. I have my own room. There is a bed, a computer and a shelf in it. I like the shelf. There are many books on it. I like to read books. It's fun. Do you have your own room?

（一）阅读短文，回答问题。

1. What's in the living room?

There is a new air conditioner, a new sofa, a TV and a bright light in the living room.

2. Where are the books?

On the shelf.

3. Where is the dining table?

In the kitchen.

（二）选择正确的答案。

(C) 4. Choose a title for the text.

A. My new room

B. My school

C. My new home

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练(二)

主题素养感悟

主话题 询问并描述物品的位置及数量

知识点

与物品位置相关的词汇：in front of　behind　beside　above　between

重要句式：
—Where is the ball?
—It is in front of the dog.

能力素养 能够准确认读与物品位置相关的方位介词，能够简单描述物品的位置及数量。

文化素养 能够养成及时整理个人物品的习惯；了解垃圾分类标识，增强环保意识。

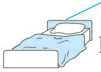
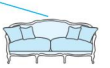
趣听练

听力训练

一、Danny 的屋子非常乱，请根据妈妈的话，帮他整理一下房间吧。(将物品与其所在的位置连线)

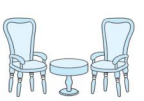
1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 

a. above　b. beside　c. in front of　d. on

A. 　B. 　C. 　D. 

二、Danny 要带同学参观自己的新家，听一听，判断下面有关事物及摆放位置的图片与 Danny 的描述一致吗？一致写“T”，不一致写“F”。

(T) 1. 　(F) 2. 

(F) 3. 　(F) 4. 

(T) 5. 

三、Tom 针对 Danny 的新家介绍提出了好多问题，来帮 Danny 找到合理的回应吧。

(C) 1. A. There are five living rooms in my home.
B. There are four bathrooms in my home.
C. There are two bedrooms.

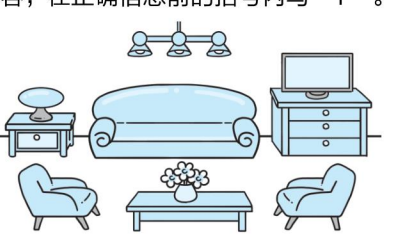
(B) 2. A. Yes, there is.
B. Yes, there are.
C. No, there isn't.

(C) 3. A. The bed is near the window.
B. The plant is beside the door.
C. The chair is near the door.

(A) 4. A. No. It's small, but nice.
B. It's nice.
C. It's tidy.

趣读写

四、这是 Danny 家客厅的照片。请根据照片的内容，在正确信息前的括号内写“T”。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

(T) 1. There is a table between the blue sofas.

(T) 2. The TV is on the sofa.

(T) 3. There is a picture above the sofa.

(T) 4. There are three chairs in the living room.

(T) 5. There is a plant on the table.

五、Sarah 介绍自己家房间的演讲稿有几处弄丢了，请联系上下文或其他提示，帮她把弄丢的地方补充完整吧！

There 1. **are** four rooms in my new house. My bedroom 2. **is** big and nice. There 3. **is** a big bed. There 4. **are** two pictures 5. **on** the wall. Between the pictures, there is a 6. **clock**（钟表）. There is a chair in 7. **front** of the desk. I 8. **like** my bedroom very much!

六、读一读 Danny 介绍一对双胞胎的卧室的短文，完成任务。

This is Lucy and Lily's bedroom. It's not big, but it's nice and tidy. There are two beds in the bedroom. There is a desk beside the beds. There are many books on it. There are two chairs beside the desk. There are two lamps on the desk, too. They often read books and do their homework under the lamps. There are two pictures of plants on the wall. They like their bedroom.

（一）阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

(T) 1. The bedroom is small, but it's tidy.

(F) 2. There are two desks in the bed room.

(F) 3. The desk is between the beds.

(T) 4. There are two lamps and many books on the desk.

(T) 5. There isn't a clock in the bedroom.

（二）按短文内容出现的先后顺序给图片排序。



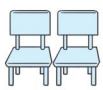
(3)


(2)


(1)


(5)


(6)


(4)

七、你有自己的房间吗？简单描述一下房间的物品及摆放位置。

要求：条理清晰，不少于 5 句话。

提示词：beside，over，between，in front of…

Look, this is my room. It's small, but nice. There is a bed, a table and a chair in it. The table is near the window. I often read books and do my homework on it. There is a small clock on the table. There are some pictures on the wall. They are nice. I like my room.



八、朗读小达人。Amy 正在向朋友们介绍自己的家及家里物品的位置。请读下面的句子，注意按意群朗读，并注意语音语调。



1. This is the living room.
2. There are so many pictures here.
3. There is a table, a bed and a computer in my bedroom.
4. There are lots of flowers in it.
5. —Where is the ball?
   —It's in front of the dog.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 In a nature park

课时练 1 Part A Let's try~Let's talk

(点拨见 116 页)

一、读句子，选择正确的图片。

A.  B.  C.  D. 

(B) 1. There is a long river beside the village.

(A) 2. There is a small forest in my village.

(D) 3. There is a small lake behind the village.

(C) 4. There are some boats on the river.

二、单项选择。

(A) 1. _____ there a lake in the village?

A. Is B. Are C. Am

(C) 2. There _____ some small boats on the river.

A. be B. is C. are

(C) 3. Look! There is _____ on the farm.

A. horses B. hens C. a cow

(B) 4. —Is there a car over there?

—No, _____.

A. there is B. there isn't

C. it isn't

(B) 5. Let's go _____.

A. a boat B. boating C. boat

三、根据所给图片，回答问题。



1. —Is there a house in the village?

—Yes, there is.

2. —Is there a lake in the village?

— Yes, there is.

3. —Is there a river in the village?

— No, there isn't.

四、补全对话。

Mike: 1. B

Zhang Peng:Really? 2. E

Mike:Yes, it's very big.

Zhang Peng:Is there a farm in your hometown?

Mike:3. C There are many cows, horses and hens on it.

Zhang Peng:Is there a river in your hometown?

Mike:4. A But there is a big lake.

Zhang Peng:5. D

Mike:Yes, I like it.

A. No, there isn't.

B. There is a nature park in my hometown.

C. Yes, there is.

D. Do you like it?

E. Is there a mountain in your hometown?

听 五、听 Tom 介绍他家乡的自然公园，并根据 Tom 的介绍，简单画一画。

听力训练

略

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn~Draw and ask

☞(点拨见116页)

一、看图补全句子。

1. There is a __river__ in the park.



2. Let's go to the __forest__.



3. Is there a big __mountain__ behind our school?



4. There are some small boats on the __lake__.



5. Is there a __hill__ near your home?



二、照例子写句子。

例：



(park; a lake)

—Is there a lake in the park?

—Yes, there is.

1.



(city, a bridge)

— Is there a bridge in the city?

— Yes, there is.

2.



(village; a building)

— Is there a building in the village?

— Yes, there is.

三、按要求完成句子。

1. There is a farm in my village. (变一般疑问句)

Is there a farm in your village?

2. Is there a photo on the wall? (作否定回答)

No, there isn't.

3. nature in there park city my is a (.) (连词成句)

There is a nature park in my city.

4. There is a boat on the river. (对画线部分提问)

What's on the river?

四、给下列句子排列顺序，完成对话。

(2) Yeah! Is there a river, Dad?

(4) Cool! Let's go fishing!

(1) Hi, Amy! Let's go to the nature park!

(3) Yes, there is. And there are many fish in the river.

五、阅读短文，判断句子正(T)误(F)。

Hello, I'm Mary. I'd like to introduce my hometown to you. It's a beautiful village. There are many small houses and a river. There is a bridge over the river. The water is clean. There are many fish in it. I often catch the fish in the river. There is a road near the river. There are many flowers beside the road. You can see green grass, many trees and a lake. Welcome to my village. You will love it.

(T) 1. Mary's hometown is a beautiful village.

(F) 2. Mary often catches the fish in the river and goes boating on the river.

(T) 3. There are many small houses and a river in the village.

(F) 4. There are some tall buildings in the village.

(T) 5. The meaning of "catch" is "捕捉".

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

☞（点拨见 116 页）

一、选出下列每组画线部分发音不同的一项，写到题前的括号内。

（ C ）1. A. now　　B. how　　C. know

（ A ）2. A. flower　　B. snow　　C. yellow

（ C ）3. A. about　　B. house　　C. would

（ C ）4. A. mouse　　B. mountain　　C. should

（ A ）5. A. you　　B. cloud　　C. cow

二、判断句子中画线部分读音是（T）否（F）相同。

（ T ）1. Wow! There are many flowers. How beautiful!

（ T ）2. The mouse is afraid of the brown cat.

（ F ）3. My favourite pet is the mouse. I like its small mouth.

（ F ）4. Your mother has long blond hair. She looks young.

（ T ）5. There are many flowers around the big mountain.

三、看图，补全句子。

1.  2.  3.  4. 

1. I see a big ___cow___ on the farm.

2. There is a ___mouse___ in the small ___house___.

3. Let's ___count___ from one to ten.

4. Look at the white ___clouds___. How nice!

四、单项选择。

（ B ）1. Let's _____ the nature park.

A. go　　B. go to　　C. to go to

（ B ）2. There are lots of _____ in the river.

A. duck　　B. fish　　C. boat

（ B ）3. —Where are the birds?

—_____ in the tree.

【全书导学号 7217133】

A. There are　　B. They're

C. It's

（ B ）4. _____ a farm in the village?

A. There is　　B. Is there

C. Are there

（ B ）5. There _____ some clouds in the sky.

A. isn't　　B. are　　C. is

五、阅读短文，完成下列练习。

This is our school. It's big and nice. There is a big library in it. There are some tall trees in front of the library. But there aren't any flowers. We want to plant some flowers in our school. There is a small playground in our school. After school, I often play football with my friends there. And there is a lake in our school, too. I like it very much.

（一）根据短文内容，判断正（T）误（F）。

（ F ）1. There aren't any trees or flowers in our school.

（ F ）2. I often play basketball on the playground after school.

（二）根据短文内容回答问题。

3. What's in front of the library?

___There are some tall trees.___

4. Is there a big playground in the school?

___No, there isn't.___

5. Is there a lake in the school?

___Yes, there is.___

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练（一）

主题素养感悟

主话题 询问自然公园里的景物。

知识点

公园景物：forest hill river mountain lake

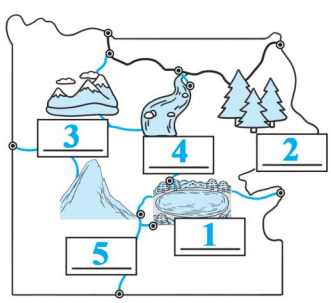
重要句式：
—Is there a forest/... in the nature park?
—Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.

能力素养 能够掌握自然公园中常见景物的英语单词，并能够在情境中询问某处是否有某物并回答。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Jenny 在介绍她的家乡，听一听，按她介绍的先后顺序标号。



二、Sam 这周日要邀请好朋友到乡下老家去玩，请根据他们的对话选出家乡的景色。

(B) 1. A.  B. 

(B) 2. A.  B. 

(A) 3. A.  B. 

(B) 4. A.  B. 

三、Chen Jie 在向朋友们介绍中国首都北京，听一听，找出和 Chen Jie 的介绍内容相符的一项。

(A) 1. A. Beijing is the capital city of China.
B. Beijing is small and poor.
C. Beijing is big and nice.

(A) 2. A. There are many tall buildings.
B. There aren't any buildings.
C. There is a small building.

(A) 3. A. The Great Wall is very long.
B. The Great Wall is great.
C. The Great Wall is short.

趣读写

四、Jenny 用猜谜的方式告诉网友她的家乡都有什么，请你读一读，猜出景物写在横线上并与其正确的图片连线。

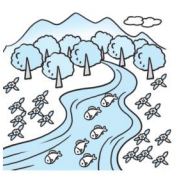
1. river
2. forest
3. farm
4. mountains

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

1. It's long. Sometimes it looks like a mirror (镜子). We can see many things on it. There are some fish in it. We can swim in it in summer.
2. It's big and green. It has many tall trees. It's animals' family.
3. It's big. We can see many fresh vegetables on it. We can also see many cows, hens and horses.
4. They're big and tall. There are many trees and flowers on them. There is a river between them.

五、Mike 和 John 正在谈论学校附近的自然公园。请看图并读一读，补全对话。



Mike: There's a nature park near our school.
John: Great! Is there a forest in the park?
Mike: 1. Yes, there is.
John: Is there a lake beside the forest?
Mike: 2. No, there isn't. But there 3. are some big 4. mountains behind it.
John: 5. Is there a 6. river in the park?
Mike: Yes. The water is 7. clean. You can see some 8. fish in it. And there are some nice 9. flowers beside it.
John: Cool. I like this nature park.

六、下面是 John 新去的一个自然公园，请读一读，寻找恰当的信息，回答问题。

Hello, friends! My name is John. Today I go to the nature park. There is a big mountain in it. There are many small houses and a beautiful lake on the mountain. There are some ducks and boats on the lake. There are many fish in the lake. There is a road beside the lake. There are many tall green trees beside the road. There are many flowers on the playground. We play football on it. I like this park.

1. Where is the road?
It's beside the lake.
2. Is there a river in the park?
No, there isn't.
3. What's on the lake?
There are some ducks and boats on the lake.

七、请简单介绍一下你家乡的自然公园。提示：请用 there be 句型。

Hello, this is the nature park of my village. There is a lake in it. There are many ducks on the lake. There is a forest in it, too. There are some houses in front of the forest. I like the park.

趣说练

八、请根据 Amy 所给的照片，仿照例子准确询问并回答某处是否有某物。

口语测评

例：



(a farm; city)

—Is there a farm in your city?
—Yes, there is. /No, there isn't.

1. 
(a lake; city)

2. 
(a mountain; hometown)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4 Part B Let's try~Let's talk

☞(点拨见 117 页)

一、读一读，选择正确的答案补全句子。

There is　There are　Is there　Are there

1. Are there any buildings in your city?
2. There is a small hill behind my home.
3. Is there a lake in the nature park?
4. There is some bread on the table.
5. Are there any pictures above the table?
6. There are some cows on the farm.

二、单项选择。

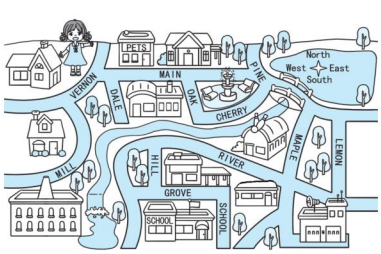
(B) 1. —Are there _____ mountains in the park?
—Yes, there are _____.
A. some; any　B. any; some
C. any; any

(B) 2. There _____ many people in the park.
A. is　B. are　C. isn't

(A) 3. There _____ a duck and many dogs.
A. is　B. are　C. aren't

(B) 4. _____ there _____ water in the bottle?
A. Are; any　B. Is; any
C. Is; some

三、根据图片，回答问题。



1. Is there a river in the city?
Yes, there is.
2. Are there any flowers in the city?
No, there aren't.
3. Are there any buildings in the city?
Yes, there are.
4. Is there a mountain in the city?
No, there isn't.

四、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

In the morning, the nature park is very noisy. There are many people running in the park. There are many flowers on the hill. Many girls are dancing here. There is a lake near the hill. Some boys feed the fish at the bank. There are some ducks on the lake. What a beautiful park!

(F) 1. The nature park is quiet.
(F) 2. There is a forest in the nature park.
(F) 3. The boys are running on the grass.
(T) 4. There is a lake near the hill.
(T) 5. There is a beautiful park.

听 五、听录音，把物品的序号写在相应图片前的括号中。

听力训练

A. house　B. trees　C. buildings
D. ducks　E. rabbits　F. animals

(C) 1. 　(B) 2. 

(A F) 3. 　(D E) 4. 

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn~Write and say

☞(点拨见 117 页)

一、补全单词，并选择相应的图片。

(B) 1. house (C) 2. village

(A) 3. bridge (D) 4. building


A


B


C


D

二、看图补全句子。



1. There __are__ many apples __on__ the __tree__.



2. __Is__ there a __house__ in the __tree__?



3. __Are__ there any __buildings__ near the __river__?



4. There __is__ a __bridge__ __over__ the __river__.



5. There __are__ many __houses__ in the village.

三、根据情景对话，选择合适的句子填空。

Mary: My uncle and aunt live in a small village.

John: Really? 1. __B__

Mary: There is a river, a bridge and a big mountain.

John: 2. __A__

Mary: Yes. There are many trees in it, too.

John: 3. __D__

Mary: No, there aren't any buildings. 4. __E__

John: Do you like the small houses?

Mary: Yes, I like the village, too. 5. __C__

A. Are there any flowers in the village?
B. What's in the village?
C. Because the air is fresh.
D. Are there any buildings in the village?
E. There are many small houses.

四、按要求完成下列各题。

1. is park quiet nature so the (!) (连词成句)

__The nature park is so quiet!__

2. There are some eggs on the plate. (变否定句)

__There aren't any eggs on the plate.__

3. There are two small lakes in the park. (对画线部分进行提问)

__What's in the park?__

4. There are some fish in the river. (变一般疑问句)

__Are there any fish in the river?__

五、选词填空。

Beside but flowers lake lots trees bridge love over river

Hello, friends! Welcome to my hometown. It's small 1. __but__ very beautiful. Look! There is a nice 2. __lake__. It's big and clean. There is a long 3. __river__, too. It is the Yellow River. There are so many 4. __flowers__ here. There is a great 5. __bridge__. It's 6. __over__ the Yellow River. 7. __Beside__ the Yellow River, there are 8. __lots__ of 9. __trees__. They are tall and green. I 10. __love__ my hometown.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 6 Part B Read and write~Let's wrap it up

一、用所给词的适当形式填空。

1. There __are__ (be) many people in the park.
2. __Are__ (be) there __any cows__ (some cows) on your farm?
3. There __is__ (be) some __chicken__ (chicken) on the table.
4. __Is__ (be) there a __building__ (building) in your hometown?
5. There __isn't__ (be not) a __bridge__ (bridge) over the river.

二、根据提示写单词，补全句子。

1. Look at this picture. This is one __bridge__ of China. It's the longest one of the world.



2. The Oriental Pearl Radio & TV Tower（东方明珠广播电视塔）is a tall __building__.
It's very famous in Shanghai.



3. This is my __village__. There are many small __houses__.



4. —Are there __any__ __trees__ behind the house?
—Yes, there are. And there is a __lake__ in front of it.



三、对话配对。

(D) 1. Do you see any animals in the forest?
(E) 2. Is there a ruler under the book?
(C) 3. How many cows are there on the farm?
(A) 4. What's in the zoo?
(B) 5. Where is the lake?

A. There is a tiger, a snake and many birds in it.
B. It's between the hills.
C. I can see three.
D. No, I don't.
E. No, but there is a crayon.

四、阅读短文，回答问题。

Look at the picture! This is my village. My village is at the foot of the mountain. There are not tall buildings here. But there are many small houses and trees. We often climb the trees after school. In autumn, we often pick apples on the trees. There is a small river around my village. The water is clean. We can see many fish in it. In summer, I often catch the fish with my friends. It's fun. There are many flowers everywhere. The flowers are very beautiful. The children can catch the butterflies on the flowers. I have a lot of fun in the village. I like it.

1. Where is the village?
__It's at the foot of the mountain.__
2. Are there any tall buildings in the village?
__No, there aren't.__
3. What does the writer（作者）do in the river in summer?
__He often catches the fish with his friends.__
4. What's in the village?
__There is a mountain, small houses, trees, a small river and flowers in the village.__
5. What does "at the foot of the mountain" mean?
__在山脚下__

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 7 Part C Story time

课内阅读 对点练

一、请根据课本中"Story time" 的故事完成以下任务。（教材第 65 页）

（一）判断以下句子是否与故事内容相符。相符圈 YES，不相符圈 NO。

1. Zip and Zoom go to a village.
YES NO

2. They take pictures of the bridge.
YES NO

3. There is nothing in the house.
YES NO

4. The meaning of "broken" in the text is "好".
YES NO

5. They take pictures of the koala first.
YES NO

（二）根据故事内容回答问题。

1. Where do Zip and Zoom go?
They go to a nature park.



2. Are there any people in the house?
No, there aren't.



3. What's in the tree?
A koala is in the tree.



4. What is broken?
The card is broken.



（三）核心素养练

地球是我们的家园，我们要通过自己的行动来保护它。请根据自己的生活经验，选择合适的答案。

(C) 1. _____ is our family.
A. The sun B. The moon
C. The earth

(A) 2. How to protect（保护）the earth?
A. Turn off the light on time.
B. Forget to turn off the tap.
C. Keep the TV on all day.

拓展阅读 提升练

二、阅读短文， 完成任务。

Hello, I'm Amy. My grandparents live in a village, too. It's poor, but very beautiful. There are many mountains near the village. There is a big forest. It's near the village, too. There are many trees and flowers in the forest. Two bridges are over the river. The river is in front of my grandparents house. Look! There are many ducks and boats on the river. I often climb the mountains with my grandpa and go fishing near the bank.

（一）阅读短文，判断正（T）误（F）。

(F) 1. Amy's parents live in a village.

(F) 2. There are many trees and rivers on the mountains.

(T) 3. The forest is near the village.

(F) 4. There are three bridges over the river.

(T) 5. Amy's grandparents' house is behind the river.

（二）阅读短文，选择正确的答案。

(B) The title of this text is " _____ " .
A. My hometown
B. My grandparents' village
C. My parents' village

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

培优练 周末主题素养练（二）

主题素养感悟

- 主话题 描述家乡的景色。
- 知识点 与家乡景物相关的词汇：village house bridge tree building
  重要句式：—Are there any lakes on the mountain/...?
  —Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- 能力素养 能够在情境中询问并回答某处有某物。
- 文化素养 能够亲近自然，热爱自然；了解并热爱祖国大好河山。

趣听练

听力训练

一、Tom 的朋友都在询问 Tom 家乡的情况，请根据他们的提问，选择正确的选项完成句子。

(C) 1. —Is there a _____ here?
—Yes.
A. forest B. mountain C. bridge

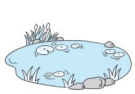
(B) 2. There is a _____ in the village.
A. house B. building C. bridge

(B) 3. There is a _____ in the tree.
A. bird B. house C. duck

(C) 4. Are there any _____ on the mountain?
A. trees B. houses C. rivers

二、Danny 要带同学去自己家乡参观，听一听，判断下列图片与他所描述的是否一致？一致写“T”，不一致写“F”。

1. 
(F)

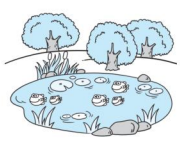
2. 
(T)

3. 
(T)

4. 
(F)

5. 
(T)

三、Danny 在向同学们介绍自己的家乡。请听一听，根据 Danny 的描述，圈出他的家乡。


A


B

四、Chen Jie 周一班会课上要向朋友们介绍她的家乡。听一听，帮她完成她的演讲稿。

My hometown is a small 1. village. There is a long 2. river in front of the village. The water is clean. We often swim in it. There is a new 3. bridge over the river. There are some beautiful flowers beside the river. There are high 4. mountains 5. behind the village. My 6. house is under the tree. So I like to read books under the tree.

趣读写

五、这是 Danny 家乡的照片。请根据照片的内容判断哪些是正确的信息。在正确信息前的括号内写“T”。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



( ) 1. There is a tall building in the village.
(T) 2. There is a bridge over the river.
( ) 3. There is a mountain in front of the village.
(T) 4. There are many trees behind the house.
(T) 5. There is a boy on the bridge.

六、读一读 Danny 和同学的对话，帮助他们选择正确的回应。

Chen Jie: Excuse me, where are you from?
Danny:1. D
Chen Jie: Are there any small houses in your village?
Danny:2. B There is a tall building, too.
Chen Jie:3. C
Danny: Yes, there is. You can see many trees in it.
Chen Jie:4. E
Danny:Yes, there are. 5. A We often catch fish in the rivers.

A. You can see many fish in them.
B. Yes, there are.
C. Is there a forest in the village?
D. I'm from a small village in Shandong.
E. Are there any rivers on the mountain?

七、Jenny 国庆节去朋友的家乡玩了两天，读一读她的介绍，看看那里都有什么，请按她介绍的先后顺序，给下列图片排序。

Hello, I'm Jenny. I go to Danny's hometown this National Day. It's a small village. There is a nature park in it. It's big and nice. There are many trees and flowers in it. There is a river in the park. We can see many ducks. Look! There is a swing (秋千) between the trees near the river. I swing with Danny on it. We fly kites together. I like this village.


(4) (3) (2) (1)

八、你的家乡漂亮吗？向朋友们描述一下家乡都有什么吧。

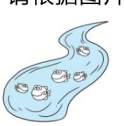
要求：条理清晰，不少于 5 句话。

I'm Lily. I live in a small town in the USA. There are many tall buildings in our town. There is no river in it. But there are many new roads in it. There are many buses and cars on the roads every day. There are many trees and flowers beside the roads. There is a nature park in our town. We often fly kites in it. I like my town.

趣说练

九、Danny 周末要去一个自然公园，他在向朋友询问那里的景物，请根据图片提问并回答。

口语测评

例：
(fish ; river)
—Are there any fish in the river?
—Yes, there are. /No, there aren't.

1. 
(rabbits; forest)

2. 
(a building; village)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Recycle 2

阶段复习练 Units 4~6

一、下列单词属于哪个家，请将画线部分读音相同的单词归类，将序号写在括号里。

A. yellow　B. good　C. zoo　D. like
E. candy　F. may　G. feet　H. wow

(H) 1. cow　flower　now
(E) 2. rainy　family　city
(C) 3. cool　school　afternoon
(B) 4. book　cook　foot
(F) 5. paint　rainy　wait
(A) 6. slow　snow　window
(G) 7. beef　meet　see
(D) 8. nice　kite　nine

二、单项选择。

(A) 1. The children will _____ football this weekend.
A. play　B. to play　C. plays

(B) 2. Wu Yifan _____ maths and Chinese _____ Thursday.
A. have; at　B. has; on
C. has; in

(C) 3. These _____ my teachers.
A. am　B. is　C. are

(B) 4. _____ there any toys in the toy box?
A. Is　B. Are　C. Am

(C) 5. Peter can _____ his clothes.
A. watch　B. washes　C. wash

三、根据问句，选择合适的答语。

(E) 1. What's in the bedroom?
(B) 2. Where is the river?
(A) 3. Is there a hill in the park?
(D) 4. Are there any books in your bag?
(C) 5. What do you often do?

A. Yes, there is.
B. It's near the mountain.
C. I often read books.
D. No, there aren't.
E. There is a bed and a table.

四、根据提示补全句子。

1. —What's in the bedroom?
—There is a bed in the bedroom.



2. —What can your grandfather do?
—He can speak English.



3. —Does he often play football on the weekend?
—Yes, he does.



4. —Is there a lake on the hill?
—Yes, there are many fish in it.



5. —What's your favourite fruit?
—Apples. They're sweet.



五、给句子选择相符的图片。

A. 
B. 
C. 
D. 
E. 

(C) 1. Amy is helpful. She can make the bed.
(D) 2. I often water the flowers.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

（ E ）3. I can see a table near the sofa.

（ B ）4. There are many trees behind the house.

（ A ）5. There is a baby in the box.

六、补全对话。

John：Hello, Lucy. Can you play football?

Lucy：1. E

John: Really? Can you help me?

Lucy: 2. D Have a try, please!

John: Let me try. Great! 3. C Can Peter play football?

Lucy: 4. B But he can swim.

John: What can Tom do?

Lucy: 5. A

A. He can play table tennis.
B. No, he can't.
C. I can play football, too.
D. No problem!
E. Yes, I can. I can play football well.

七、按要求完成下列句子。

1. The ball is under the chair.（对画线部分提问）

Where is the ball?

2. Tom can do some kung fu.（对画线部分提问）

What can Tom do?

3. I can dance.（变否定句）

I can't dance.

4. I can wash my clothes.（变一般疑问句）

Can you wash your clothes?

5. at an I one English class o'clock have (.)（连词成句）

I have an English class at one o'clock.

八、根据上下文，选择合适的单词补全短文。

our the cartoons party for English

We'll have a 1. party next Friday. We can do something 2. for the party. Tom can sing 3. English songs. Sandy can play 4. the piano. Sam can draw 5. cartoons. Miss Li is 6. our music teacher. What can she do? She can sing. She can dance, too.

九、阅读短文，判断句子正（T）误（F）。

Look, I have a nice bedroom. Come and have a look. It's small but nice. There is a big bed, a small desk, a shelf and a closet. The bed is near the closet. The shelf is near the closet too. Many good books are on the shelf. I like the books very much. Oh, yes, there is a big board on the wall. I often write and d raw pictures on the board . Oh, my bedroom is so beautiful!

（ T ）1. It's about the bedroom.

（ F ）2. There is a small board near the wall.

（ T ）3. There is a big bed, a small desk, a shelf and a closet in the bedroom.

（ F ）4. The bed is near the desk.

（ T ）5. My bedroom is very nice.

十、书面表达。

这是Jenny现在居住的城市，请你帮她描述一下。要求：条理清晰，不少于5句话。



Hello, I'm Jenny. I live in a big city now. It's very beautiful. There are many tall buildings in it. There is a big school in it too. The road is wide. There are many cars, buses and taxis on the road. There are many trees beside the road. I like the city. Do you like it?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

基础默写卡

Unit 1 基础默写卡

Part A

一、单词过关（英汉互译）。

1. 年老的 old　2. 年轻的 young　3. 滑稽的 funny
4. 慈祥的 kind　5. 严厉的 strict　6. know 知道；了解

二、短语过关（汉译英）。

1. 美术老师 art teacher　2. 科学老师 science teacher
3. 数学老师 maths teacher　4. 校长 head teacher

三、翻译下列句子。

1. ——他是谁？
——他是我们的音乐老师。
— Who is he?
— He's our music teacher.
2. 谁是你的英语老师？
Who is your English teacher?
3. 他年轻吗？
Is he young?

Part B

一、单词过关（英汉互译）。

1. 有礼貌的 polite　2. 有用的 helpful　3. 聪明的 clever
4. 羞怯的 shy　5. 辛勤的 hard-working　6. Ms 女士
7. will 将要　8. sometimes 有时；间或　9. robot 机器人
10. speak 会说；会讲（某种语言）　11. finish 完成；做好

二、翻译下列句子。

1. ——吴一凡是什么样的？
——他很有礼貌。
— What's Wu Yifan like?
— He's very polite.
2. 他很乐于助人。 He is very helpful.
3. His name is Robin. 他的名字是罗宾。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 基础默写卡

Part A

一、单词过关（英汉互译）。

1. 周一 Monday　2. 周二 Tuesday　3. 周三 Wednesday
4. 周四 Thursday　5. 周五 Friday　6. 周六 Saturday
7. 周日 Sunday　8. 周末 weekend　9. cooking 烹饪；烹调

二、翻译下列句子。

1. Look at my photos.

看看我的照片。

2. ——你们周二有什么课？

——我们有数学、英语和音乐课。

— What do you have on Tuesdays?

— We have maths, English and music.

3. 我和你奶奶上烹饪课。

I have a cooking class with your grandma.

Part B

一、词汇过关（英汉互译）。

1. 洗我的衣服wash my clothes　2. 看电视 watch TV　3. 做作业 do homework
4. 读书 read books　5. 踢足球 play football　6. often 时常；常常
7. park 公园　8. tired 疲倦的　9. play sports 做体育运动
10. every day 每一天　11. schedule 工作计划；日程安排

二、翻译下列句子。

1. ——周末你经常洗你的衣服吗？

——是的。

— Do you often wash your clothes on the weekend?

— Yes, I do.

2. ——你经常做体育运动吗？

——不。我不喜欢体育运动。

— Do you often play sports?

— No, I don't. I don't like sports.

3. 吴一凡经常在周末读书。

Wu Yifan often reads books on the weekend.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 基础默写卡

Part A

一、词汇过关（汉译英）。

1. 冰激凌 ice cream　2. 汉堡包 hamburger　3. 茶 tea
4. 三明治 sandwich　5. 蔬菜沙拉 salad　6. 面包 bread
7. 鸡肉 chicken　8. 米饭 rice　9. 水 water
10. 牛肉面 beef noodles　11. 橙汁 orange juice　12. 蔬菜 vegetable

二、翻译下列句子。

1. I'm hungry.
   我饿了。
2. ——你想吃点什么？
   ——一个三明治，谢谢。
   — What would you like to eat?
   — A sandwich, please.
3. ——你想喝点什么？
   ——我想喝点茶。
   — What would you like to drink?
   — I would like some tea.

Part B

一、词汇过关（英汉互译）。

1. 新鲜的 fresh　2. 美味的 delicious　3. 健康的 healthy
4. 辣的 hot　5. 甜的 sweet　6. onion 洋葱

二、短语过关（英译汉）。

1. my favourite food 我最喜欢的食物　2. her favourite drink 她最喜欢的饮料

三、翻译下列句子。

1. ——你最喜欢的食物是什么？
   ——我喜欢牛肉面。它们很可口。
   — What's your favourite food?
   — I like beef noodles. They are delicious.
2. Sarah 最喜欢的食物是鱼。
   Sarah's favourite food is fish.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 基础默写卡

Part A

一、词汇过关（汉译英）。

1. 跳舞 dance　2. 唱英文歌 sing English songs　3. 练功夫 do kung fu
4. 画画 draw pictures　5. 弹琵琶 play the *pipa*　6. 画卡通画 draw cartoons

二、翻译下列句子。

1. We'll have an English party next Tuesday.
下周二我们要开一个英语聚会。
2. ——孩子们，你们能为聚会做些什么？
——我能唱英文歌。
— What can you do for the party, children?
— I can sing English songs.
3. 谁会跳舞？
Who can dance?

Part B

一、词汇过关（英汉互译）。

1. 游泳 swim　2. 讲英语 speak English　3. 烹饪 cook
4. 打篮球 play basketball　5. 打乒乓球 play ping-pong　6. wonderful 极好的；了不起的
7. learn 学；学习；学会　8. no problem 没问题　9. send emails 发送电子邮件

二、翻译下列句子。

1. ——你会功夫吗？
——是的，我会。
— Can you do any kung fu?
— Yes, I can.
2. ——你会讲英语吗？
——不，我不会。
— Can you speak English?
— No, I can't.
3. 我不会弹琵琶。
I can't play the *pipa*.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 基础默写卡

Part A

一、词汇过关（英汉互译）。

1. 钟表 clock　2. 相片 photo　3. 植物 plant
4. 自行车 bike　5. 水瓶 water bottle　6. there 表示存在或发生

二、翻译下列句子。（英汉互译）

1. Your room is really nice!

你的房间真漂亮！

2. （这里）有一张大床。

There is a big bed.

3. 我的电脑在书桌上。

My computer is on the desk.

4. 我的房间里有一个钟表、一盆植物和一张相片。

There is a clock, a plant and a photo in my room.

Part B

一、词汇过关（英汉互译）。

1. 在……前面 in front of　2. 在旁边（附近） beside
3. 在……中间 between　4. 在（或向）……后面 behind
5. 在（或向）……上面 above　6. house 房屋；房子；住宅
7. my grandmother's flowers 我祖母的花　8. lots of 大量；许多
9. move 搬家　10. dirty 肮脏的
11. everywhere 处处；到处

二、翻译下列句子。

1. ——球在哪儿？

——它在狗的中间。

— Where is the ball?

— It's between the dogs.

2. 到处都是图画和相片。

There are pictures and photos everywhere.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 基础默写卡

Part A

一、单词过关（汉译英）。

1. 森林 forest　2. 山岳 mountain　3. 小山 hill
4. 河；江 river　5. 湖泊 lake　6. 公园 park

二、短语过关（英汉互译）。

1. 在森林里 in the forest　2. go boating 去划船
3. 在公园里 in the park　4. 在山前 in front of the mountain

三、翻译下列句子。

1. 我们去森林吧！ Let's go to the forest!
2. ——森林里有一条河流吗？
   ——没有。
   — Is there a river in the forest?
   — No, there isn't.
3. ——公园里有一个湖泊吗？
   ——有。那里有一些小船。
   — Is there a lake in the park?
   — Yes, there is. There are some small boats there.

Part B

一、词汇过关（英汉互译）。

1. 村庄 village　2. 树 tree　3. 桥 bridge
4. 房子 house　5. 建筑物 building　6. rabbit 兔；野兔
7. high 高的

二、翻译下列句子。

1. ——自然公园里有高楼吗？
   ——没有。
   — Are there any tall buildings in the nature park?
   — No, there aren't.
2. ——山上有湖泊吗？
   ——有。
   — Are there any lakes on the mountains?
   — Yes, there are.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

综合应用创新题 典中点

《达标检测卷》+《答案及点拨》

使用说明： 起订后将中间的检测卷取出测试使用，剩余为课时练和检测卷答案。

达标检测卷 8套

（83–114）

Unit 1 达标检测卷
Unit 2 达标检测卷
Unit 3 达标检测卷
期 中 检测卷
Unit 4 达标检测卷
Unit 5 达标检测卷
Unit 6 达标检测卷
期 末 检测卷

答案及点拨

课时部分 参考答案及点拨 / 77
检测卷部分 参考答案及点拨 / 118

教师用书

五年级 英语

上（PEP版）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时部分

Unit 1 What's he like?

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：

六、 This term we have a new English teacher. She's Miss White. She's tall and thin. She has two big eyes, and long straight hair. She's very kind. We all like her.

答案：

一、1. young 2. short 3. tall 4. quiet

二、1. C **点拨：** Jack 是人，问人的特殊疑问词用 who。
2. C **点拨：** you 是第二人称，know 是行为动词，所以需用助动词 do。
3. C 4. C 5. A

三、1. C 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. E

四、1. Who is Mr Zhang?
2. She is our music teacher.
3. I like funny teachers.
4. Is your mother tall?
5. Do you know Miss Green?

五、D C A E B

听 六、略

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Ask and answer

一、1. old 2. young 3. strict 4. kind 5. funny

二、1. your 2. and 3. strong 4. have 5. Who's

三、3 5 1 2 6 4

四、1. Who is she? Is she kind?
2. He is my maths teacher. No, he isn't.

五、1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C

方法点拨：本题可用**抓关键信息法**解答。即找到每段文字中与图片相符的关键信息。例如：第3题中 He 表示男士，young“年轻的”，football“足球”，就可以选出是图片 B。

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

一、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B

二、

happy	my	young
funny, Lily, Lucy, party, baby	shy, cry, try	you, yellow, your

三、1. B **点拨：** 由题干中的关键词“Our Chinese teacher”可知主语是单数，所以 be 动词用 is。
2. B
3. C **点拨：** 根据答语“No, she is very kind and funny.”可知主语是 she。问答人称要一致，所以问句中应该用“Is she”来询问。
4. B **点拨：** She 是指女性，选项中只有 Mrs 一词代表女性，所以选 B。
5. B **点拨：** 根据“short”和“No”可知问句中要选与 short 相反的词 tall。

四、1. Who is your maths teacher? Mr Green.
2. Is your music teacher friendly? Yes, she is.
3. Who is your head teacher? Mr Smith.

五、1. C
2. B
3. C

培优练 周末主题素养练 (一)

听力材料：

一、1. My Chinese teacher is very tall and thin.
2. My new English teacher is Miss Zhang. She is short and she has long curly hair.
3. My English teacher is very cute. She has big eyes and she wears glasses.
4. My maths teacher is very old. Sometimes she is a little strict.

二、1. Look at this strong boy! He is my friend John. He likes to play football.
2. Joe is very cute. He is very happy now.
3. Lucy is a beautiful girl. She has long blond hair.
4. Simon is fat. He likes eating. He needs to do more exercise.

三、Hello, everyone. This is a picture of my family. This is my mother. She is a little fat. She is strict. Who is this tall man? He is my father. He is thin too. Look at this man. He is old, but he is very funny. He is my grandfather.

答案：

一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A

二、1—C 2—D 3—B 4—A

三、1. B 2. C 3. A

四、2 4 3 1

方法点拨：本题用**图文一致法**解答。先阅读句子，找出关键信息，再观察图片，根据关键信息找出与文字描述相符的图片。例如：第1小题的关键信息是“He, wears glasses, old, science teacher”，再观察四幅图片，确定符合文字描述的图片是左起第四幅图。

五、1. 在单词 funny, handsome, tall, strict, kind, thin 后打“√”。
2. A 3. B

六、**范文：** Hello, everyone! This term, I have a new teacher. She is Mary. She is tall and thin. She's young, too. She has big eyes. She likes music. She often sings English songs to us. She is a little strict. But she is often friendly to us. We all like her very much.

七、1. —Do you know my brother?
—No. Is he funny?
—Yes, he is.
2. —Do you know my PE teacher?
—No. Is he strong?
—Yes, he is.

课时练 4 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：

五、1. Mrs Liu is my Chinese teacher. She's old.
2. A little baby is sleeping. Please be quiet.
3. My friend Frank is very strong.
4. I have a sister. She's a little shy.

答案：

一、1. strict 2. funny 3. kind 4. nice 5. quiet 6. friendly (圈图略)
点拨： 注意多样性思维。这样的题不仅能横着看、竖着看，还可以斜着看。

二、1. B 2. B
3. A **点拨：** sometimes 为频度副词，意为“有时”。
4. B 5. B

三、5 3 1 8 2 6 4 7

四、three; maths teacher; tall; thin; Miss Yu; nice; young; old; science

听 五、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn ~ Match and say

一、1. polite 2. shy 3. clever 4. helpful 5. hard-working

二、1. hard-working 2. helpful 3. polite 4. shy 5. clever

三、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. B

四、1. She's helpful. **点拨：** 注意 this girl 是女性，人称代词用 she，she 后面跟的 be 动词是 is。
2. They are polite. **点拨：** 注意 the students 是复数，人

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

称代词用 they，they 后面跟的 be 动词是 are。

3. He's shy. **点拨**：注意 the boy 是男性，人称代词用 he，he 后面跟的 be 动词是 is。

五、（一）1. Ms Fang 2. mother 3. her 4. maths 5. from 6. kind 7. smart 8. sometimes 9. strict 10. long hair

（二）B. 

课时练 6 Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. am 2. is 3. is 4. is 5. are 6. are 7. are

二、1. friend; helpful 2. sister; polite
3. mother; hard-working
4. grandmother/grandma; kind; funny/friendly

三、1. D 2. E 3. C 4. A 5. B

四、**方法点拨**：本题用**抓关键词法**解答。先在短文中寻找人物名称、职业、外貌特点和性格特点等关键词，再与表格中的图片及提示词一一对应，最后将信息补充完整。
1. Mr White 2. Miss Li 3. Mrs Green
4. music teacher 5. English teacher 6. short
7. long black hair, two big eyes
8. short hair, wears glasses 9. funny
10. kind 11. young, clever

课时练 7 Part C Story time

一、（一）1. YES 2. NO 3. NO 4. NO 5. NO

（二）1. He's a good football player. 2. strong
3. Rabbit. 4. He's short and thin. 5. Rabbit.

（三）1. C **点拨**：西方的 family name（姓）放在后边。
2. B **点拨**：中国的 family name（姓）放在前边。
3. C **点拨**：西方老师不叫 teacher，而是在 Mr/ Mrs/ Miss 后边加其姓。

二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

培优练 周末主题素养练（二）

听力材料：

一、Hello, everyone. There is a wolf man in your team. He is a tall boy. He's not very fat. He's not very thin. He's clever. Can you find him?

二、1. He has big eyes and a small mouth. He's Sam.
2. This tall girl is beautiful. She's Sarah. She wears glasses.
3. Look at that short girl. She's Lisa.
4. This strong boy is Lucas. He has a small mouth.
5. This little boy is Daming. He's cute and funny.

三、1. What's Miss Wang like?
2. Is your mother kind?
3. Who's that woman?
4. What's the elephant like?

四、1. **W**: Hello, I'm Lisa. I need a girl friend. I like dancing. She's tall and thin. We can dance together.
2. **M**: I'm Tom. I need a boy friend. He's helpful. We can help others.
3. **M**: I'm Tony. I like eating. I need a girl friend. We can eat delicious food together.
4. **W**: I'm Lucy. I need a girl friend. She's clever and funny. We can teach each other.

答案：

一、圈左起第四个人 **方法点拨**：此题用**听关键词法**解答，本题的关键词为 boy，tall，not fat，not thin。通过这几个关键词就能找到隐藏在队伍中的狼人。

二、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. F

三、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B

四、1—B 2—C 3—D 4—A

五、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T

六、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B

七、3 4 1 2

八、范文：

I have an idol. He is a kind man. He's more than 30 years old. He's very tall and strong. He's hard-working. He likes playing basketball. Do you know him? Haha! He's Yao Ming.

Unit 2 My week

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：

五、1. —What do you have on Mondays, Amy?
—I have art.
2. Today is Thursday.
3. —What day is it today?
—It's Sunday.
4. —Do you have Chinese on Saturday?
—Yes.
5. —What do you do on the weekend?
—I have a science class with your grandma.

答案：

一、1. D 2. B 3. C 4. A

二、1. C **点拨**：短语 Look at "看……" 为固定搭配。
2. A **方法点拨**：本题用**魔法记忆法**解答。早、午、晚前要用 in；at 黎明、午、夜、点与分；年、月、季节前要用 in；日子、星期、年月日，星期加上早、午、晚，on 在前面不能忘。
3. C 4. B
5. C **点拨**：with + 某人，表示与某人一起。

三、1. D 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. E

四、1. What do you have on Fridays?
2. We have music.
3. Look at this picture.
4. Who is your computer teacher?
5. I have a dance class with my friends.

听 五、圈 art, Thursday, Sunday, Chinese, Saturday, science

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Let's play

一、1. Monday 2. Friday 3. Wednesday 4. Saturday
5. Sunday

二、1. C 2. B 3. A
4. C **点拨**：简略回答时，it is 不可以用缩写形式，故 A 错误。
5. B **点拨**：John 是第三人称单数，谓语动词要用 "单三" 形式，故选 B。

三、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. C 5. A

四、1. Tuesdays; Thursdays **点拨**：每个周二周四都有 PE，故后面要加 "-s"。
2. reading classes
3. science; maths; computer class; art 4. Wednesday

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

一、1.  2.  3.  4.  5. 

二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F

三、1. Thursday; have; Thursdays; Chinese; English
2. maths teacher; Is; isn't 3. do; cooking; with

四、1. No, it's Wednesday. 2. What do you have on Tuesdays?

五、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T
5. T **方法点拨**：本题用**整合信息法**解答。短文中第三句提到作者每天都有语文和英语，倒数第三句提到作者星期一和星期三有美术，结合这两方面的信息可知作者星期三有英语，语文和美术是正确的。

培优练 周末主题素养练（一）

听力材料：

一、1. I like Tuesday. Because we have PE on it.
2. Do you play football on the weekend?
3. My grandpa has a cooking class.
4. Do you like maths?
5. Mr Li is his science teacher.

二、1. —What do we have on Tuesdays, Danny?
—We have science.
2. —What do we have on Wednesdays?
—We have Chinese.
3. —How about Thursdays?
—We have PE.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

4. —When do we have art?
—On Fridays.

三、**Jenny**: Hi, everyone! I'm Jenny. Tomorrow is Monday. Are you ready?
Lucy: Yes, I have music. It's my favourite.
Jenny: Lucy, you're lucky. I have maths. My maths teacher is strict.
Lucy: Don't be sad, Jenny. He's kind, too. What about you, John?
John: I have a computer class. Simon, what about you?
Simon: I have PE. I can play basketball.
Jenny: That's great! See you tomorrow!
John, **Simon**, **Lucy**: See you!

答案:

一、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. C

二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T

三、1—A 2—D 3—B 4—C

方法点拨:此题用**人物定位法**解答。先听清楚人名,再去听课程并定位出下一个不同人物的课程,最后选出正确的图片。例如:先出现的是 Lucy 的课程,就先连上 Lucy 的课程,Lucy 在回答 Jenny 的时候就确定下面介绍的是 Jenny的课程。

四、



1. Monday 2. English book
3. music book 4. Chinese book

五、(一)

	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.
maths	√		√	√	
English	√	√		√	
Chinese		√		√	√
PE	√				
music					√

(二) 1. C 2. B

六、范文:

Look at my schedule. I have music on Mondays and Chinese on Tuesdays. I have PE and maths on Wednesdays. I have science on Thursdays and English on Fridays.

七、1. —What do you have on Tuesdays? —I have English.
2. —What do you have on Wednesdays? —I have music.

课时练 4 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料:

四、1. read books 2. listen to music 3. play football
4. play basketball 5. clean the room 6. read books

答案:

一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D

二、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. C

三、1. play football; listen to music
2. don't; play football; listen to music
3. play ping-pong; read books 4. Yes; I do

听 四、star (连线略)

课时练 5 Part B Let's learn ~ Group work

一、A. a t B. o; o; e; or C. ea; oo D. ay; oo E. a; o F. aw; i; ur
1. B 2. A 3. D 4. E 5. C 6. F

二、1. do my homework 2. watch TV
3. play football 4. wash my clothes
5. read books

方法点拨:此题用**图文一致法**解答。先观察图片,然后根据图片将相应的短语填在句子中。填写时注意保证整体句型的正确性。例如:第 1 题中的图片是做作业,那么横线上应填短语"do my homework",最后观察整个句子,主语是 I,所以答案填 do my homework。

三、1. B 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. D

四、1. Do; wash your; I don't
2. Do you; read books; I do
3. What do you; do; your

课时练 6 Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. Tues + day = Tuesday
2. Wednes + day = Wednesday
3. Thurs + day = Thursday
4. Fri + day = Friday
5. Satur + day = Saturday
6. Sun + day = Sunday
(答案不唯一)

二、1. A 2. B
3. C **方法点拨**:本题用**逆向思维法**解答。第一人称 I 后跟原形,所以 likes 与 doesn't like 都不对,所以选 don't like。
4. C 5. C

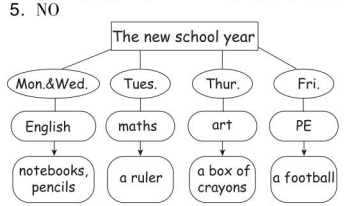
三、1. I often watch TV.
2. Do you often do your homework?
3. What do you have on Wednesdays?
4. No, I often wash my clothes.

四、1. play football 2. play the violin 3. do homework
4. wash clothes 5. watch TV

课时练 7 Part C Story time

一、(一) 1. YES 2. NO 3. YES
4. NO **点拨**:"put back" 在故事中意为"放回"。
5. NO

(二)



(三) 1. B **点拨**:在西方,一周中的第一天是星期日。
2. B **点拨**:在西方,一周中的最后一天是星期六。

二、(一) 1. F 2. T 3. T
点拨:根据"I go to school from Mondays to Fridays.",可知 Saturdays 与 Sundays 不去上学,而 Saturdays与 Sundays 就是周末。
4. T
5. T **方法点拨**:本题用**语义一致法**解答。短文中"I like Fridays best..." 与本题语义相同。

(二) 1. Chinese 2. play football

培优练 周末主题素养练 (二)

听力材料:

一、1. Jenny has a singing class on Saturdays.
2. Danny often reads storybooks at home.
3. Wu Fang goes swimming with her father.
4. Chen Long often draws pictures.

二、1. —Jim, do you read books on Saturdays?
—No, I play football with my friends.
2. —Lucy, what do you do on the weekend?
—I often do my homework.
3. —Lily, do you often fly kites in the park?
—No, I often ride a bike.
4. —Bob, what do you do on the weekend?
—I often go to the supermarket with my mother.
5. —Sam, do you play ping-pong on the weekend?
—No, I often play football with my friends.

三、**Tom**: Hi, Amy. What's that?
Amy: It's a violin.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Tom: Do you often play the violin in this park?
Amy: No, sometimes. I often read books here. Do you often ride a bike here?
Tom: Yes, I do. I like this park very much.
Amy: Me too.

答案：
一、1—C 2—B 3—D 4—A
二、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
三、1. A **方法点拨**：本题用**听前预测法**解答。阅读题干中的关键词“Where”可知是询问地点，听中多注意听地点类名词，从而得出答案。
2. B 3. A
四、1. play football 2. music 3. maths 4. Tuesdays 5. maths
五、1. E 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. D
六、1. There are five people.
2. He often reads books on Sunday morning.
3. David's mother often washes clothes on the weekend.
4. He often plays football on the weekend.
七、范文：
I'm Lucy. I have classes from Mondays to Fridays. I have an English class on Fridays and I have a PE class on Tuesdays. I like Saturdays and Sundays very much! Because I have no classes. On Saturdays, I often go to Amy's home. Amy is my good friend. We usually do our homework. We sometimes play computer games. On Sundays, I like flying kites. I have many colorful kites.
八、1. —Do you often play ping-pong on the weekend?
—Yes, I do.
2. —Do you often listen to music on the weekend?
—No, I don't. I often do my homework.

Unit 3 What would you like?

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：
五、1. I'd like some rice, please.
2. I'd like some juice, please.
3. I'd like some tea, please.
4. I'd like some noodles, please.
5. I'd like some chicken, please.

答案：
一、1. fish 2. tea 3. vegetables
4. some orange juice 5. noodles
二、1. B **点拨**：考查固定搭配。would like to do sth. 想要做某事。
2. C **点拨**：不定冠词 a 修饰可数名词单数，water 为不可数名词，不符合要求。egg 发音以元音音素开头，应用不定冠词 an；sandwich 为可数名词单数，发音以辅音音素开头，所以词前用不定冠词 a。
3. B **点拨**：some + 可数名词复数/不可数名词。A 和 C 选项是可数名词但不是复数，B 是不可数名词，故选 B。
4. C
5. A **点拨**：根据答语可知问句是针对“喝什么”进行提问，故用特殊疑问词 what。how 问怎样，where 问地点。
三、1. D 2. C 3. A 4. E 5. B
四、1. What would you like to drink?
2. Here you are.
3. What would you like to eat?
4. I'd like some eggs.
5. Sarah would like some bread.
听 五、最终连出来的图形是五角星。

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Role-play

一、**Food**: sandwich, rice, salad, noodles, hamburger, chicken
Drink: tea, water, juice, milk
二、1. ice cream 2. hamburger 3. salad 4. tea
三、1. an **点拨**：orange 是可数名词，且发音以元音音素开头，故用 an。
2. some **点拨**：fish 是不可数名词，用 some 来修饰。
3. a **点拨**：hot dog 是可数名词单数，且发音以辅音音素开头，故用 a。
4. hamburgers **点拨**：hamburgers 为可数名词复数，some 后跟可数名词复数。
5. eat 6. hungry 7. drink 8. like
四、1. rice 2. some mango juice 3. a chicken hamburger
4. coffee 5. noodles and salad 6. mango juice
7. a chicken hamburger 8. coffee

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

一、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. F
二、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. A
三、连线顺序：mouse→how→cow→down→flower→wow
四、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A

培优练 周末主题素养练 (一)

听力材料：
一、1. Amy would like pizza for breakfast.
2. Wu Yifan would like to eat a hot dog for breakfast.
3. Sam would like to eat a bowl of vegetable noodles.
4. Sarah would like to eat eggs.
二、1. —Grandpa, what would you like to eat?
—Some bread, please.
2. —Would you like some juice, Grandma?
—No, thanks. I'd like some cakes.
3. —Uncle, what would you like to eat?
—I'd like some salad.
4. —Simon, what about you? Some tea, OK?
—No, thanks. I'd like some juice.
三、1. I see some ice cream.
2. —Would you like some salad?
—No, thanks. I'd like a hamburger.
3. —What's for dinner?
—Beef noodles.
4. —What would she like to eat?
—She'd like some sandwiches.

答案：
一、1. B 2. A 3. A 4. A
二、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. A
三、1. ice cream 2. salad; hamburger
3. noodles 4. would; sandwiches
四、1. hamburgers 2. some ice cream 3. some salad
4. sandwiches
五、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. C 5. B
六、(一) vegetables; beef noodles; tomato soup; salad; bread
(二) 1. A 2. A
七、范文：
Hello, everyone! I'm Jenny. Look at the menu. I'd like some vegetables and noodles to eat. And I'd like a cup of juice to drink, too. My father would like some eggs and bread. He wants some milk, too. What about my mother? She would like some chicken, rice and soup.
八、1. —What would you like to eat?
—I'd like some salad.
2. —What would you like to drink?
—I'd like some milk.

课时练 4 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：
五、**W**: Wow, orange juice. It looks good.
M_1: I'd like orange juice. It's my favourite. What about you, Sarah?
W: I'd like milk and tea.
M_2: Sorry. We don't have milk or tea today. Would you like some water?
W: Yes, please.

答案：
一、1. beef noodles 2. chicken sandwich
3. vegetable salad 4. tomato soup

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. B
三、1. Would; like some; please
2. What's your favourite
3. We have fish sandwiches today.
四、在苹果、牛奶、面条、果汁、西红柿和鸡肉的图片下面打“√”。
听 五、圈 tea; milk; juice; water

课时练5 Part B
Let's learn ~ Look, write and say

一、1. delicious 2. healthy 3. hot 4. fresh 5. sweet
方法点拨:此题用图文一致法解答。例如:第1题中,根据图片 pizza 想到 delicious 和 tasty,然后根据首字母“d”确定本题填“delicious”。
二、1. Tom's 2. your 3. to eat 4. sandwiches 5. had
三、1. What is your favourite food?
2. What is your favourite food?
Hamburgers. They're delicious.
3. What is your favourite food?
Ice cream. It's sweet.
4. What is your favourite food?
Salad. It's healthy.
四、1. D 2. A 3. E 4. C 5. B

课时练6 Part B
Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. hamburgers 2. noodles 3. sandwiches 4. boxes
5. tomatoes 6. onions 7. strawberries
方法点拨:此题用魔法记忆法解答。名词单数变复数,直接加-s占多数;-s,-x,-ch,-sh 来结尾,直接加上-es;(部分特殊)词尾是-f或-fe,加-s之前先将-f或-fe变-ve;辅音字母+-y在词尾,把-y变-i再加-es;词尾字母若是-o,常用三个已足够,hero,tomato,potato,要加-es请记好。
二、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. E
三、1. chicken 2. delicious 3. hot 4. healthy
5. watermelon juice 6. sweet
四、(一) 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. T 5. T
(二) 
(√)

课时练7 Part C Story time

一、(一) A D B C
(二) 1. NO 2. YES 3. NO 4. YES
(三) 1. C 2. C 3. B
二、(一) 1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F
(二) 1. His favourite food is beef.
2. Because it's healthy and delicious.

培优练 周末主题素养练 (二)

听力材料:
一、1. —I will have a party. What would you like to eat, Amy?
—I'd like chicken. It's delicious.
2. —What about you, John?
—I'd like some vegetables. They're healthy.
3. —Do you like peppers, Nancy?
—No, they're too hot. I like bananas. They're sweet.
4. I'm Danny. I like peppers. They're hot.
5. —What's your favourite fruit, Jenny?
—Grapes. They're fresh.
二、**Mike**: Are you hungry, Tom?
Tom: No, I'm thirsty. I'd like some carrot juice. Would you like some, Mike?
Mike: No, I'm hungry. I'd like some beef. It's my favourite food. It's delicious.
三、**Chen Jie**: Hi, Mike!
Mike: Hi, Chen Jie!
Chen Jie: What's your favourite food?
Mike: Sandwiches. They're delicious.
Chen Jie: Would you like some tea?
Mike: No, thanks. I'd like some milk. What about you?
Chen Jie: Me, too.

答案:
一、1—b—E 2—a—A 3—e—D 4—d—B 5—c—C
二、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. C
三、1. food 2. Sandwiches 3. delicious
4. tea 5. No, thanks 6. milk
四、1. T 点拨:both 表示“两者都”,根据图表可知,Jenny 和 Danny 都喜欢面条。
2. T 3. F 4. T
5. F 点拨:all 表示“三者或三者以上都”,根据图表可知 Danny 不喜欢鱼肉,所以本题是错误的。
五、1. Yao Ming 2. 40 3. beef and fish
4. apples and mangoes 5. tea 6. basketball
六、(一) 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
(二) B
七、范文:
Hi, I'm Li Ling. My favourite fruit is apples. They're healthy and sweet. I like vegetables, such as tomatoes, potatoes, carrots and so on. Carrots are my favourite. I don't like peppers. They're too hot. My favourite drink is milk. It's healthy. What about you?
八、1. —What's your favourite food?
—My favourite food is the sandwich. It's delicious.
2. —What's your favourite food?
—My favourite food is ice cream. It's sweet.

Recycle 1
阶段复习练 Units 1 ~ 3

一、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C
二、1. hard-working 2. Wednesdays 3. wash your clothes
4. sandwich 5. Hamburgers; delicious
三、1. B 点拨:but 表示转折,与 kind 对应的单词是 strict,故选B。
2. B 点拨:Wu Yifan 是第三人称单数,后面接的动词 have 变 has;星期前用介词 on,故选B。
3. C 点拨:these, students 都是复数,故 be 动词用 are。
4. C
5. B 方法点拨:此题用逆向思维法解答。根据 eat 可知前边是食物,故排除 milk;some + 可数名词复数/不可数名词,hamburger 为可数名词,但不是复数,故C排除;salad 为不可数名词,故B正确。
四、1. D 2. E 3. A 4. C 5. B
五、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. E 5. A
六、1. I don't like coffee.
2. What's Amy's favourite drink?
3. Is your maths teacher strict?
4. Do you often wash your clothes after school? 点拨:含有行为动词的陈述句变一般疑问句时,句首加 Do,人称 I 变 you,形容词性物主代词 my 变 your,句尾加问号。
5. What do you have on Fridays?
七、1. D 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. E
八、1. Thursday 2. school 3. Noodles
4. Chicken 5. healthy 6. oranges
九、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
十、范文:
Hi, I'm Amy. I'm a funny girl. I have big eyes and a small nose. I like sports. Football is my favourite. I like to eat meat. But now I have to eat more vegetables than meat. They're healthy for my body. Do you want to be my friends?

Unit 4 What can you do?
课时练1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料:
六、1. I can sing.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. What can you do?
3. I can draw a cat.
4. We'll have a party next Tuesday.

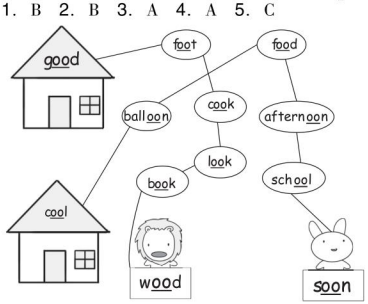
答案：
一、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. D
二、1. D 2. C 3. B 4. A
三、1. have 点拨：will + 动词原形。
2. do
3. children；their 点拨：these + 可数名词复数；形容词性物主代词 + 名词。
4. dance 点拨：用 and 连接的两个词词性一致，sing 原形，故 dance 也用动词原形。
四、1. B 2. A
五、1. E 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A
听 六、sing what draw Tuesday

课时练 2 Part A
Let's learn ~ Do a survey

一、1. dance 2. sing English songs 3. draw cartoons
4. do some kung fu 5. play the *pipa*
二、1. What 点拨：答语 do some kung fu 为行为动作，所以用 what 提问。
2. Who 点拨：答语 Jenny 为人名，用 who 提问。
3. How/What
三、1. C 2. E 3. D 4. B 5. A
四、1. I can play football. 2. She can dance.
3. What can you do? 4. Who can sing songs?
五、1. play the piano 2. dance 3. do kung fu
4. play the *pipa*

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

一、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. A 5. C
二、



三、1. C
2. B 点拨：乐器类名词前加 the，球类/棋类名词前不加 the。
3. B 4. A
四、1. We'll have an English party next Friday.
2. What can you do for the party?
3. My sister can play the *erhu*.
五、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. D
六、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F

培优练 周末主题素养练 （一）

听力材料：
一、1. The first one is Jenny. She can play the *pipa*.
2. The second one is Li Lei. He can draw cartoons.
3. The third one is Amy. She can dance.
4. The fourth one is Daming. He can do Chinese kung fu.
5. Tony can sing. He is the fifth.
6. At last, they clean the classroom together.
二、1. —What can you do for my grandfather's birthday party, Mum?
—I can make a birthday cake for him.
2. —What can you do, Dad?
—I can cook the big dinner.
3. —What can you do for the party, Simon?
—I can do some kung fu.
4. —What can you do, Sam?
—I can sing English songs.
三、1. I'm Chen Jie. I can swim, but I can't dance.
2. My father can play basketball.
3. My grandma can swim and dance.

答案：
一、4 1 6 5 2 3
二、1—C 2—B 3—A 4—D
三、1. B 2. B 3. B
四、1. play football 2. play ping-pong
3. play the *pipa* 4. do Chinese kung fu
五、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T
六、1. Amy：sing songs；play the *pipa*
Alice：draw cartoons；play the drums
Chen Jie：sing songs；play football
Sarah：sing songs；dance
2. B
七、范文：
Hello, I'm Jim. I'm happy on the weekend. I can swim. I can run. I can play football with my friend. Then I can read books. What can you do on the weekend?
八、1. —What can you do? —I can fly kites.
2. —What can you do? —I can play the violin.

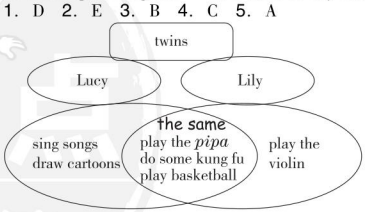
课时练 4 Part B
Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：
五、1. —Can you help your mother clean the room?
—Yes, I can.
2. —Can you dance?
—No, I can't. I can sing songs.
3. He can make a puppet for his little sister.
4. I can read comic books.
5. I can play basketball with my friends.

答案：
一、1. C 2. D 3. A 4. E 5. B
二、1. B 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B
三、1. What can you do?
2. Can Amy draw any pictures?
点拨：变一般疑问句，can 提前，some 变 any。
3. Yes, it can. 点拨：dog 的人称代词用 it。
4. Robin can't play the violin.
5. We'll learn some songs today.
四、1. Danny. /Danny can speak English.
2. Can; swim 3. can't 4. swim and cook
听 五、1 3 5 2 4

课时练 5 Part B
Let's learn ~ Write and say

一、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. B
二、1. cook 2. swim 3. play basketball 4. play ping-pong
三、1. I can speak English. 2. I can't do any kung fu.
四、1. D 2. E 3. B 4. C 5. A
五、



课时练 6 Part B
Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. the 2. / 3. the 4. / 5. the 6. /
点拨：乐器类名词前加 the，球类/棋类名词前不加 the。
二、1. She can cook. 2. Can he play football?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）									总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	十三	
得　分														

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（ C ）1. A. Miss　　B. Mr　　C. Mrs

（ C ）2. A. head teacher　　B. science teacher　　C. maths teacher

（ A ）3. A. shy　　B. sky　　C. fly

（ C ）4. A. clever　　B. river　　C. quiet

（ A ）5. A. strong　　B. long　　C. young

二 听录音，判断下列图片的正（T）误（F）。（5 分）

1. （ T ）

2. （ F ）

3. （ T ）

4. （ T ）

5. （ F ）

三 听录音，选答语。（10 分）

（ C ）1. A. Yes, he is.　　B. Yes, he can.　　C. Yes, he's my maths teacher.

（ A ）2. A. Miss White.　　B. Miss White's.　　C. She's kind and funny.

（ B ）3. A. I'm cute.　　B. He's hard-working.　　C. She's clever.

（ B ）4. A. He's a kind teacher.　　B. Really?　　C. Thank you!

（ C ）5. A. Yes, he is.　　B. No, she is.　　C. No, she isn't.

四 听录音，补全短文。（10 分）

This term, we'll have two new __teachers__. Mr __Black__ will be our maths teacher. He's tall and __strong__. He __looks__ cool. His class is very __funny__. We all like him. Miss Green will be our __Chinese__ teacher. She's __hard-working__ and __clever__. Sometimes she's __strict__, but she's __kind__ to us.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选出画线部分发音不同的一项。（5 分）

（ D ）1. A. many　　B. baby　　C. rainy　　D. my

（ C ）2. A. sunny　　B. sorry　　C. fly　　D. family

（ C ）3. A. yes　　B. young　　C. windy　　D. yellow

（ B ）4. A. sad　　B. same　　C. happy　　D. ant

（ C ）5. A. me　　B. she　　C. hello　　D. be

六 根据图片和首字母提示写单词。（5 分）

1. 

2. 

3. 

4. 

5. 

1. Our Chinese teacher is very **old**.
2. My little brother is **clever**. He can work out the difficult problems.
3. My brother is very **hard-working**.
4. Our students are very **polite**. They often say hello to each other.
5. I'm thin. I want to be **strong**, so I have to do exercise.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（ A ）1. —_____ you know Mr Liu? —I don't know.

A. Do　　B. Does　　C. Did

（ A ）2. —_____ your art teacher like? —She's tall and thin.

A. What's　　B. Who's　　C. Where's

（ B ）3. —Is he funny? —No, he's _____.

A. tall　　B. strict　　C. strong

（ B ）4. Helen is very helpful _____ home.

A. in　　B. at　　C. for

（ B ）5. I have three new _____.

A. teacher　　B. teachers　　C. teacher's

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

学号　姓名　班级　学校　密　封　线

八 选词填空。(10 分)

strong old funny young clever

1. She's so **funny**. She often makes us laugh (笑).
2. —What's she like?
   —She's **young** and pretty.
3. Robin is short but **strong**. He's **clever**. He can speak Chinese and English.
4. Look at that **old** man. His hair is all white.

九 补全对话。(10 分)

Amy: We will have a new science teacher today.

Sarah: Really? 1. **B**

Amy: Miss Yang.

Sarah: What's she like?

Amy: She's young and kind. 2. **E**

Sarah: 3. **C**

Amy: Sometimes. 4. **D**

Sarah: 5. **A** Let's go to the classroom!

Amy: OK.

A. Time for English.
B. Who's your new science teacher?
C. Is she strict?
D. But she's friendly.
E. She's pretty, too.

十 按要求完成句子。(10 分)

1. My English teacher is young. (变一般疑问句)
   Is your English teacher young?
2. Our science teacher is Miss Green. (对画线部分进行提问)
   Who is your science teacher?
3. be will teacher Mr Hu Chinese new our (.) (连词成句)
   Mr Hu will be our new Chinese teacher.
4. Is your sister clever? (作否定回答)
   No, she isn't.
5. My art teacher is tall and thin. (对画线部分进行提问)
   What's your art teacher like?

十一 阅读短文，判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(10 分)

Hello, my name is Steven. I have many good teachers, but my favourite teacher is Miss Li. She is a very good teacher. She is very young, but her English is very good. She teaches us English every day. Her class is so much fun. She sings songs with us and plays games with us. We are so happy. And we learn English well. Our English is very very good. So I like her very much. She likes reading books and playing sports. After class, Miss Li often plays sports with us. We are very happy. We all love her very much. What about you? Do you have a good teacher?

(**F**) 1. Steven's favourite teacher is Mrs Li.
(**T**) 2. Miss Li is Steven's English teacher.
(**F**) 3. Miss Li likes singing songs, reading books and dancing.
(**T**) 4. Miss Li is very young.
(**F**) 5. Miss Li often reads books with her students.

十二 阅读短文，回答问题。(5 分)

My name is Wu Yifan. I'm a hard-working boy. I'm tall and a little strong. I often play sports. I'm very polite and shy. I can speak English well. I have some new teachers. My English teacher is Miss Green. She's young. She's very kind. Sometimes she's a little strict. My music teacher is Miss Yang. She's funny and young. Mr Zhang is our science teacher. He is very funny. He is tall and thin. We all like them.

1. What's Wu Yifan like?
   He's tall and a little strong. He's hard-working, too. He's polite and shy.
2. Is Wu Yifan shy?
   Yes, he is.
3. Who is Wu Yifan's science teacher?
   Mr Zhang.
4. What's Wu Yifan's music teacher like?
   She's funny and young.
5. Is Mr Zhang funny?
   Yes, he is.

十三 你的好朋友是谁呢？请你以“My good friend”为题，给我们介绍一下你朋友的性格和外貌吧！(5 分)

My good friend

I have a good friend. Her name is Lily. She is a tall and beautiful girl. She wears glasses. She is very helpful. She often helps me with my study.

密 封 线

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）						总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	
得　分											

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. Thursday　　B. Saturday　　C. Sunday

（ B ）2. A. science　　B. maths　　C. Chinese

（ C ）3. A. meat　　B. beef　　C. read

（ C ）4. A. play football　　B. play ping-pong　　C. play basketball

（ B ）5. A. watch TV　　B. wash your clothes　　C. work at school

二 听录音，选出与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（ B ）1. A. 

B. 

（ A ）2. A. 
B. 

（ B ）3. A. 
B. 

（ A ）4. A. 
B. 

（ B ）5. A. 
B. 

三 听录音，选择正确的应答语。（10 分）

（ A ）1. A. It's Monday.　　B. It's cloudy and cool.

（ A ）2. A. Yes, I do.　　B. No, I don't have.

（ A ）3. A. I often read books.　　B. I have PE.

（ A ）4. A. It's a storybook.　　B. I have a dancing class.

（ A ）5. A. Me, too.　　B. No, I'm not.

四 听录音，给下列图片排序。（10 分）


（ 5 ）


（ 2 ）



（ 1 ）


（ 4 ）


（ 3 ）

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选出与画线部分发音不同的一项，将答案填在题前括号内。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. h<u>ea</u>d　　B. pl<u>ea</u>se　　C. m<u>ea</u>t　　D. p<u>ea</u>ch

（ D ）2. A. b<u>ee</u>f　　B. b<u>ee</u>　　C. w<u>ee</u>k　　D. br<u>ea</u>kfast

（ C ）3. A. f<u>ee</u>d　　B. t<u>ea</u>　　C. br<u>ea</u>d　　D. <u>ea</u>t

（ A ）4. A. h<u>ea</u>lthy　　B. s<u>ea</u>　　C. t<u>ea</u>ch　　D. s<u>ee</u>

（ C ）5. A. d<u>o</u>g　　B. h<u>o</u>t　　C. d<u>o</u>　　D. <u>o</u>ften

六 根据句意、提示或首字母，将句子补充完整。（10 分）

1. Do you often __play football__（踢足球）on the weekend?
2. What do you have on W__ednesdays__?
3. Mike often __does his homework__（做他的作业）in the evening.
4. Does your father often __play sports__（做运动）?
5. Sometimes my sister __watches TV__（看电视）after school.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（ B ）1. What do you have _____ Fridays?
A. in　　B. on　　C. at

（ C ）2. You should _____ sports every day.
A. plays　　B. playing　　C. play

（ C ）3. Lily sometimes _____ her clothes on Sundays.
A. wash　　B. washing　　C. washes

（ C ）4. I have an _____ class in the afternoon.
A. maths　　B. Chinese　　C. English

（ C ）5. Do you often play _____ football here?
A. the　　B. a　　C. /

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 荣德基

八 按要求完成下列各题。(10 分)

1. I often draw pictures on Sunday afternoons. (对画线部分提问)
   What do you often do on Sunday afternoons?
2. I often clean my room on Saturdays. (改为一般疑问句)
   Do you often clean your room on Saturdays?
3. Do you often play the *pipa*? (作否定回答)
   No, I don't.
4. I usually draw pictures on Mondays. (用 she 改写句子)
   She usually draws pictures on Mondays.
5. grandpa with I a have class cooking my (.) (连词成句)
   I have a cooking class with my grandpa.

九 阅读短文，完成任务。(20 分)

a. 阅读短文，选择正确答案。(10 分)

Hello! I'm Mike. It's Thursday today. I have English, maths and music. But I don't like music. So I don't like Thursdays. I like Tuesdays. I have PE and a computer class on Tuesdays. I like PE. And I like to play computer games. But playing computer games too much is bad for our eyes. So I often play football and basketball with my friends on the weekend. Before that, I have to do my homework.

(B) 1. Mike doesn't like _____.
A. Tuesdays B. Thursdays C. Fridays

(C) 2. Mike has _____ on Thursdays.
A. English B. maths and music C. A&B

(C) 3. Mike often _____ on the weekend.
A. plays ping-pong and basketball
B. plays football and ping-pong
C. plays football and basketball

(C) 4. Why does Mike not like Thursdays?
A. Because he doesn't like English.
B. Because he doesn't like maths.
C. Because he doesn't like music.

(B) 5. The phrase "playing computer games too much" means "_____".
A. 玩电脑游戏太贵 B. 玩电脑游戏太多 C. 玩电脑游戏太少

b. 阅读短文，回答问题。(10 分)

Hello, I'm Jenny. My weekend is very busy, but I feel happy. On Saturdays, I often do my homework and read books in the morning. I like reading comic books and storybooks. In the afternoon, I often clean my bedroom and wash my clothes. In the evening, I often help my mum cook dinner. On Sundays, I often play football with my friends in the morning. I like playing sports. Because it can make me healthy. In the afternoon, I often draw pictures. Then I visit my grandparents with my parents. We have supper together. We have lots of fun.

1. How is Jenny's weekend?
   It's busy.
2. What does Jenny often do on Sunday afternoons?
   She often draws pictures.
3. Does Jenny clean the bedroom on Saturday evenings?
   No, she doesn't.
4. Why does Jenny like playing sports?
   Because it can make her healthy.
5. Does Jenny have a good time on the weekend?
   Yes, she does.

十 写作。(15 分)

同学们，这是 Jenny 的日程安排。假如你是 Jenny，请根据表格内容介绍一下你的一周安排吧！

要求：1. 条理清晰、语句通顺、书写规范。
2. 不少于 5 句话。

	Sun.	Mon.	Tues.	Wed.	Thur.	Fri.	Sat.
Jenny	wash clothes	Chinese, English	music, art	PE, science	dancing class	swimming class	do homework

Hello, I'm Jenny. This is my schedule. I wash my clothes on Sundays. I have Chinese and English on Mondays. I have music and art on Tuesdays. I have PE and science on Wednesdays. I have a dancing class on Thursdays. I have a swimming class on Fridays. I do my homework on Saturdays. What do you do in a week?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词。（5 分）

（ C ）1. A. healthy　　B. hungry　　C. thirsty

（ B ）2. A. sandwich　　B. salad　　C. chicken

（ A ）3. A. cow　　B. now　　C. wow

（ B ）4. A. fruit　　B. food　　C. fish

（ B ）5. A. would　　B. should　　C. could

二 听录音，选出与你所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. 　B. 

（ B ）2. A. 　B. 

（ B ）3. A. 　B. 

（ A ）4. A. 　B. 

（ B ）5. A. 　B. 

三 听录音，选择正确的应答语。（10 分）

（ B ）1. A. Happy birthday!　　B. Thank you!　　C. Here you are.

（ A ）2. A. Yes, please!　　B. You're welcome.　　C. No, I'm not.

（ A ）3. A. I'd like some milk.　　B. I'd like some bread.　　C. I like vegetables.

（ C ）4. A. I'd like some eggs.　　B. She'd like some tea.　　C. He'd like some rice.

（ B ）5. A. My favourite food is bread.　　B. Her favourite food is beef.
C. His favourite fruit is apples.

四 听录音，补全短文。（10 分）

Hello, I'm Betty. It's time for ___lunch___. I can see some ___food___ on the table. Look at the ___tomatoes___. They're ___healthy___. The beef ___noodles___ are ___hot___. The chicken is ___delicious___. What about the ___salad___? It's very ___fresh___. And the ice cream is ___sweet___. It's my favourite.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选出画线部分发音不同的一项，将序号填在括号内。（5 分）

（ D ）1. A. window　　B. yellow　　C. slow　　D. now

（ C ）2. A. cow　　B. wow　　C. tomorrow　　D. how

（ C ）3. A. happy　　B. sad　　C. cake　　D. had

（ C ）4. A. flower　　B. down　　C. snow　　D. brown

（ A ）5. A. breakfast　　B. meat　　C. pea　　D. teach

六 找出下列每组单词中不同类的一项。（5 分）

（ B ）1. A. old　　B. onion　　C. fresh

（ B ）2. A. salad　　B. hungry　　C. candy

（ C ）3. A. ice cream　　B. bread　　C. tired

（ C ）4. A. your　　B. his　　C. us

（ C ）5. A. speak　　B. eat　　C. favourite

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（ B ）1. I don't like watermelons, but apples _____ OK.
A. is　　B. are　　C. am

（ C ）2. What would you like _____?
A. drink　　B. drinking　　C. to drink

（ B ）3. I'm very _____. I'd like some water.
A. hungry　　B. thirsty　　C. strong

（ A ）4. Amy's favourite food is _____.
A. pizza　　B. juice　　C. tea

（ C ）5. Ice cream is _____. I like it very much.
A. hot　　B. fresh　　C. sweet

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

八 看图，补全句子。(10 分)







1. I'd like some **sandwiches**.
2. **Tomatoes** **are** my favourite vegetables.
3. —What **would** you like to **drink**?
   —**I'd** like some orange **juice**.
4. —Mike's favourite food is beef **noodles**.
   —**They're** delicious.
5. I love **ice** **cream**. **It's** sweet.

九 按要求完成下列各题。(10 分)

1. My favourite vegetable is cabbage. (对画线部分提问)
   What's your favourite vegetable?
2. What would you like to drink? (用 milk 回答)
   I'd like some milk.
3. I like onions. (改为否定句)
   I don't like onions.
4. My favourite colour is blue. (用 her 改写句子)
   Her favourite colour is blue.
5. fish food favourite Sarah's is (.) (连词成句)
   Sarah's favourite food is fish.

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(20 分)

a. 阅读短文，选择正确答案。(10 分)

Chinese food is very famous in the world. Many foreigners (外国人) like it very much. There are many kinds of Chinese food. Xinjiang food is famous for (因……闻名) mutton kebabs. Sichuan food is very hot. I like to eat hot pot in winter. It's warm and delicious. Guangdong food is a little sweet. I don't like sweet food. I like to eat dumplings with my friends and family. In China, there is a lot of delicious food. It's so lucky that I'm a Chinese.

(**B**) 1. Chinese food is _____ in the world.
A. delicious B. famous C. sweet

(**B**) 2. Xinjiang people often eat _____.
A. hot pot B. mutton kebabs C. dumplings

(**C**) 3. Why do you like to eat hot pot in winter?
A. Because it's delicious. B. Because it's warm. C. Both A and B.

(**C**) 4. I don't like _____ food.
A. Sichuan B. Xinjiang C. Guangdong

(**B**) 5. "It's so lucky that I'm a Chinese." means _____.
A. 我很高兴我是中国人 B. 我很幸运我是中国人 C. 我很幸运我会汉语

b. 阅读短文，回答问题。(10 分)

My name is Mike. I'm a student of Yucai Primary School. I go to school from Monday to Friday. I have lunch at school on these days at school. I have beef noodles on Mondays. I have rice and chicken on Tuesdays. My favourite food is chicken. I have sandwiches and salad on Wednesdays. I don't like salad. I like to eat meat. But I need to eat more vegetables. My favourite drink is milk. It's healthy. I have eggs with tomatoes and rice on Thursdays and Fridays.

1. When do you have lunch at school?
   From Monday to Friday.
2. Do you have rice and chicken on Wednesdays?
   No, I don't.
3. What do you have on Thursdays and Fridays?
   I have eggs with tomatoes and rice on Thursdays and Fridays.
4. What's your favourite drink?
   My favourite drink is milk.
5. What do you need to eat?
   I need to eat more vegetables.

十一 Tommy 是个喜欢各种美食的孩子，妈妈总说他是个"小吃货"。下面都是Tommy爱吃的食物，请你以"My favourite food"为题，为 Tommy 写一篇小作文吧。(10 分)



My favourite food

Hello, I'm Tommy. I like different kinds of food. Ice cream is my favourite. My favourite meat is beef and chicken. They are delicious. Hamburgers are my favourite food, too. What about fruit? My favourite fruit is bananas. They are healthy.

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

期中检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

题号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）									总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	十三	
得分														

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. strong　B. long　C. young
（ B ）2. A. Sunday　B. Sundays　C. Saturday
（ C ）3. A. play the piano　B. play the *pipa*　C. play the guitar
（ B ）4. A. science　B. music　C. maths
（ A ）5. A. fruit　B. food　C. fresh

二 听录音，给下列图片排序。（5 分）



（ 3 ）


（ 1 ）


（ 5 ）


（ 2 ）



（ 4 ）

三 听录音，选答语。（10 分）

（ C ）1. A. No, he isn't.　B. He's shy.　C. Yes, he's my maths teacher.
（ C ）2. A. It's Sunday.　B. I play football.　C. I have a cooking class.
（ A ）3. A. Yes, I do.　B. No, he doesn't.　C. Me, too.
（ B ）4. A. I'd like some water.　B. Yes, please!　C. Here you are.
（ A ）5. A. Coffee, it's hot.　B. Vegetables, they're healthy.　C. Fish, it's delicious.

四 听录音，补全句子。（10 分）

1. My brother is a __hard-working__ boy. He likes to read books.
2. —What's your favourite food?　—__Ice cream__. It's __sweet__.
3. —Do you often __play football__ after school?　—Yes, I do.
4. What do you do on __Thursdays__?
5. I'm hungry. I'd like some __sandwiches__. They're __delicious__.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选出每组单词画线部分发音不同的一项。（5 分）

（ C ）1. A. fly　B. shy　C. rainy　D. my
（ C ）2. A. cloudy　B. sorry　C. by　D. candy
（ D ）3. A. cow　B. down　C. flower　D. yellow
（ A ）4. A. head　B. teach　C. eat　D. beef
（ C ）5. A. window　B. slow　C. how　D. show

六 选出每组单词中不同类的一项。（5 分）

（ C ）1. A. funny　B. short　C. onion　D. kind
（ A ）2. A. sunny　B. Sunday　C. Monday　D. Friday
（ B ）3. A. apple　B. tea　C. banana　D. peach
（ C ）4. A. our　B. your　C. them　D. his
（ B ）5. A. swim　B. hot　C. play　D. wash

七 根据图片和首字母提示写单词或短语。（10 分）

1. Sarah would like some __salad__.



2. Sarah is a __helpful__ girl. She often helps others.



3. I have English and music on __Wednesdays__.



4. Chen Jie often __does her homework__ after school.



5. People need to eat vegetables. They're __healthy__.



八 单项选择。（10 分）

（ C ）1. What do you have _____ dinner?
A. to　B. with　C. for
（ B ）2. I have a dancing class _____ my sister.
A. and　B. with　C. to

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 荣德基

(A) 3. Mike often _____ TV on the weekend.
A. watches B. watch C. watchs

(C) 4. —Who's this young man?
—He's _____ uncle.
A. Sarah B. Sarahs C. Sarah's

(B) 5. Sunday is the _____ day of the week.
A. one B. first C. seven

九 补全对话。(5 分)

Chen Jie: Welcome to our school. Can I interviewyou for our school newspaper?
Mr. Steven: Sure.
Chen Jie: 1. B
Mr. Steven: Well, I often read some books and watch TV on Saturdays.
Chen Jie: 2. A
Mr. Steven: I often do some shopping.
Chen Jie: 3. D
Mr. Steven: Yes, I do.
Chen Jie: What's your favourite food?
Mr. Steven: 4. C
Chen Jie: Do you like China?
Mr. Steven: 5. E
Chen Jie: Thank you so much.

A. How about Sundays?
B. What do you often do on the weekend?
C. My favourite food is dumplings.
D. Do you like Chinese food?
E. Yes, it's beautiful.

十 按要求完成句子。(10 分)

1. My sister is shy. (改为一般疑问句)
Is your sister shy?
2. I have some rice and chicken for lunch. (对画线部分进行提问)
What do you have for lunch?
3. her food what's favourite (?) (连词成句)
What's her favourite food?
4. I play football on Mondays. (改为否定句)
I don't play football on Mondays.
5. I would like to drink some milk. (写同义句)
I would like to have some milk.

十一 选词填空。(10 分)

She beautiful with doesn't but delicious Her eats likes and

My name is Amy. I have a new English teacher. She is Miss Green. She is young and beautiful. Her favourite food is chicken. It's delicious. She likes vegetables but not peas. She has apples every day. She often eats lunch at school. She likes weekends. Because she doesn't work on the weekend. She often sees a film with her friends and they have dinner together. She likes to listen to music, too.

十二 阅读短文，判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(10 分)

I have a good pen pal. His name is Ted. He is a clever boy, but he eats too much and doesn't like playing sports.

He has a big breakfast every morning. He has four eggs, lots of bread and butter (黄油) and a big glass of milk. For lunch, he eats two hamburgers, a lot of French fries and chicken. He drinks a lot of soda (苏打汽水), too. For dinner, he likes beef and salad. He often eats hamburgers, eggs, chicken and beef. He likes ice cream and soda, too. Too much food is not good for health. So Ted is very fat.

(T) 1. Ted is my good pen pal.
(T) 2. He is clever and fat.
(F) 3. He has four eggs, lots of bread and butter and a big glass of milk for lunch.
(F) 4. Too much food is good for health.
(T) 5. Ted doesn't like playing sports.

十三 下面是新来的语文老师的信息卡，请你根据信息卡的内容写一篇短文，介绍一下这位老师。可适当发挥想象。(5 分)

姓名	年龄	性格	爱好	最喜欢的食物
Li Xia	30	kind	play ping-pong	salad

Our new teacher

This is our new Chinese teacher, Miss Li. She's young and tall. She is only 30 years old. She's kind to us, but sometimes she's strict in her class. She likes playing ping-pong. We often play it together after school. Her favourite food is salad. It's healthy. She's a good teacher. We all like her.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（ B ）1. A. draw pictures　　B. draw cartoons　　C. draw a house

（ C ）2. A. sing a song　　B. sing English songs　　C. sing Chinese songs

（ B ）3. A. play ping-pong　　B. play football　　C. play basketball

（ C ）4. A. do kung fu　　B. do the homework　　C. do the housework

（ B ）5. A. dance　　B. cook　　C. swim

二 听录音，选出与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. 　B. 

（ B ）2. A. 　B. 

（ A ）3. A. 　B. 

（ B ）4. A. 　B. 

（ A ）5. A. 　B. 

三 听录音，选择正确的答语。（10 分）

（ C ）1. A. I can speak French.　B. I can speak Japanese.
C. I can speak Chinese and English.

（ C ）2. A. Yes, I do.　　B. No, I'm not.　　C. No, I can't.

（ A ）3. A. John can play football.　B. I can sing.　　C. Mike can't play football.

（ A ）4. A. Wonderful!　　B. Thank you!　　C. No problem.

（ A ）5. A. I can help you.　　B. Let's go swimming!　C. Cool!

四 听录音，选出所给问题的正确答案。（10 分）

（ C ）1. Who can play ping-pong in the class?

A. Chen Jie.　　B. Kitty.　　C. Zhang Peng.

（ B ）2. What's Mr Smith like?

A. He likes art.　　B. He's tall.　　C. He's a teacher.

（ A ）3. Jack can _____ for the party.

A. play the *pipa*　　B. play the *erhu*　　C. sing an English song

（ B ）4. Can Robot play chess?

A. No, I can't.　　B. Yes, it can.　　C. It's a computer.

（ C ）5. What can Zhang Peng do?

A. He can play basketball.　　B. He can swim.

C. He can play ping-pong.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 根据单词画线部分的读音给单词分类。（5 分）

A. speak	B. food	C. send	D. cartoon	E. good
F. next	G. email	H. zoo	I. dance	J. foot

1. party: DI　　2. read AG　　3. cool BH

4. any CF　　5. book EJ

六 单项选择。（10 分）

（ B ）1. I can't do _____ kung fu.

A. some　　B. any　　C. a

（ B ）2. —_____ can make a robot? —Chen Jie.

A. What　　B. Who　　C. How

（ B ）3. Can you play _____ piano?

A. any　　B. the　　C. /

（ B ）4. What can you do _____ the party?

A. of　　B. for　　C. with

（ C ）5. I can dance, but I _____ play the *erhu*.

A. can　　B. don't　　C. can't

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

七 用所给词的适当形式填空。(10 分)

1. Oliver can speak **Chinese** (China) very well.
2. Here **comes** (come) a lovely dog.
3. I **can** (can) sing, but I **can't** (can) dance.
4. The **children** (child) are so happy.
5. I don't have **any** (some) toys.

八 看图，补全下列句子。(10 分)

1. 
2. 
3. 
4. 

5. 

1. The children can **sing English songs**.
2. I can **draw cartoons** for the birthday party.
3. —What can he do? —He can **play basketball**.
4. —Can she **speak English**? —Yes, she can.
5. —Can you **cook**? —Sorry, I **can't**.

九 补全对话。(10 分)

Miss White: Hello, Amy! 1. **C**

Amy: Yes, I am.

Miss White: 2. **A**

Amy: I can help my mother clean the room.

Miss White: What else can you do?

Amy: 3. **D**

Miss White: Can you wash your clothes?

Amy: 4. **E** But I can clean the dishes.

Miss White: Can you sweep the floor?

Amy: No, I can't. 5. **B**

Miss White: Good girl!

A. What can you do at home?
B. But I'd like to have a try.
C. Are you helpful at home?
D. I can help my mother set the table.
E. No, I can't.

十 阅读短文，选择正确答案。(15 分)

Hello, I'm Lucy. I'm a twelve-year-old girl. I have a twin sister. She's Lily. We are helpful at home. I can help my mother clean the room. Lily can help my grandpa water the flowers. I can do the dishes, and she can set the table before the dinner. I can wash my clothes, and she can help my grandpa cook eggs. We are sunny, too. We can sing English songs and dance. My grandparents can tell some funny stories to us.

(**C**) 1. Lily is _____ years old.
A. 10 B. 20 C. 12

(**C**) 2. Can Lily set the table?
A. Yes, I can. B. No, she can't. C. Yes, she can.

(**C**) 3. Lucy and Lily are _____ at home.
A. sunny B. helpful C. Both A and B.

(**A**) 4. What can Lucy and Lily both do?
A. They both can sing and dance.
B. They both can clean the room.
C. They can both cook eggs and water the flowers.

(**C**) 5. "Set the table" means _____.
A. 擦桌子 B. 清理桌子 C. 摆餐具

十一 今天是个好天气，你和家人去公园玩，请你根据图片描述你们都会干什么。(10 分)

要求：1. 条理清晰、语句通顺、书写规范。
2. 不少于 5 句话。



Today is a sunny day. We're in the park. Look! My grandpa can **do kung fu. He looks cool. My grandma can play the *erhu*. My father can play football. My mother can dance. This boy is me. I can draw cartoons.**

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）						总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	
得　分											

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词或短语。（5 分）

（ B ）1. A. picture　B. photo　C. piano
（ B ）2. A. rain　B. rainbow　C. rainy
（ C ）3. A. between　B. beside　C. behind
（ B ）4. A. boat　B. water bottle　C. better
（ A ）5. A. plant　B. play　C. plate

二 听录音，判断图片与所听内容是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

1. （ F ）　2. （ T ）　3. （ F ）　4. （ T ）　5. （ F ）

三 听录音，选择正确的答语。（10 分）

（ A ）1. A. Thanks.　B. Me, too.　C. Let's play!
（ C ）2. A. It's on the door.　B. It's over the door.　C. It's on the wall.
（ A ）3. A. There is a bike.　B. This is a bike.　C. I have a bike.
（ B ）4. A. It's new.　B. Beside the table.　C. It's a book.
（ A ）5. A. There are five.　B. There are some desks.　C. Look at the picture.

四 听录音，补全句子。（10 分）

1. There is a __picture__ in my room.
2. The mouse is __behind__ the desk.
3. There is a __plant__ near the window.
4. There is a fan __above__ my head.
5. I can see a red __bike__.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读句子，判断句中单词画线部分发音是（T）否（F）相同。（10 分）

（ T ）1. I wait for the rain to paint the rainbow.
（ T ）2. I always play football on Tuesdays.
（ T ）3. It's a rainy day. We must stay at home.
（ F ）4. We make a birthday cake for the little girl.
（ F ）5. My yellow desk is near the window. How about yours?

六 选词填空。（注意大小写）（10 分）

have, has, there is, there are, is, are

1. —What do you __have__ on Tuesdays?
   —English and maths.
2. —What __is__ the elephant like?
   —It __has__ a long nose.
3. —Here __are__ today's specials. __Have__ some bread, please.
   —Thanks.
4. __There is__ much water here.
5. My grandpa __has__ a garden. __There are__ lots of flowers in it.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（ B ）1. _____ a nice photo!
A. Where　B. What　C. How

（ C ）2. —_____ —There is a bed and a desk.
A. What's it?　B. Where's it?　C. What's in your room?

（ A ）3. There _____ a book and a lamp on the desk.
A. is　B. are　C. am

（ B ）4. There _____ some boys in the park.
A. is　B. are　C. am

（ B ）5. They're _____ plants.
A. Sarah　B. John's　C. my grandparents

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 荣德基

八 看图补全句子。(10 分)



1. The little puppy __is__ __under__ __the__ __bed__ .



2. __There__ __is__ a football __between__ __the__ __boxes__ .



3. —Where __are__ __you__ ?
   —I'm __behind__ __the__ __door__ .



4. There __are__ so __many__ __flowers__ __in__ the garden.



5. There's a __plant__ __near__ the table.

九 按要求完成句子。(10 分)

1. There is a book on the table. (改为复数句子)
   __There are many books on the table.__
2. There are three birds in the tree. (变否定句)
   __There aren't three birds in the tree.__
3. in of have grandparents front a garden house their my (.) (连词成句)
   __My grandparents have a garden in front of their house.__
4. There is a map on the wall. (对画线部分进行提问)
   __What's on the wall?__
5. Where are the dogs? (用在床下回答)
   __They're under the bed.__

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(20 分)

a. 阅读短文，选择正确答案。(10 分)

Hi, I'm Jenny. Welcome to my home. This is our living room. It's not big, but nice. There is a TV, a sofa and some plants in it. The sofa is near the door. There are some pictures of my family on the wall above the sofa. There is a fishbowl near the TV. Some beautiful plants are beside the fishbowl. I like fish. There is a toy bear on the fishbowl. It's very cute. I like our living room.

(B) 1. The text talks about _____.
A. the bedroom B. the living room C. the kitchen

(A) 2. Where is the sofa?
A. It's near the door. B. It's behind the door. C. It's near the TV.

(C) 3. The plants are _____ the fishbowl.
A. on B. between C. beside

(C) 4. What's in the living room?
A. There is a TV, a sofa and some books in it.
B. There is a TV, a sofa, a fishbowl and some boxes in it.
C. There is a TV, a sofa, a fishbowl, a toy bear, some plants and some pictures in it.

(A) 5. The living room is _____.
A. small but nice B. big and nice C. nice and cute

b. 阅读短文，回答问题。(10 分)

My bedroom is not big but it's very bright. Because every day the sunshine can come in. In my bedroom, there is a long desk near the window. On the desk, there is a shelf and many books. I like to read them in my bedroom. There are two tables near the bed. On the tables, there is a lamp, a toy and a photo of me. The waste bin is under the table. A clock is near the bed. There are many beautiful clothes in the closet. There is a piano in my bedroom. I often play the piano. My bedroom is very sweet. Every day when I open my eyes, I feel happy. I like my bedroom very much. Do you like it?

1. Is it a living room or a bedroom?
   __It's a bedroom.__
2. What's on the long desk?
   __There is a shelf and many books.__
3. What does the writer often do in the bedroom?
   __She often plays the piano and reads books.__
4. Where is the clock?
   __The clock is near the bed.__
5. Where is the waste bin?
   __The waste bin is under the table.__

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 达标检测卷

时间：40 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）							总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	
得　分												

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，选出你所听到的单词。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. three　　B. tree　　C. there

（ C ）2. A. bridge　　B. boating　　C. building

（ B ）3. A. horse　　B. house　　C. mouse

（ B ）4. A. front　　B. from　　C. friend

（ B ）5. A. over　　B. above　　C. under

二 听录音，选出与所听内容相符的图片。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A.　B.

（ B ）2. A.　B.

（ A ）3. A.　B.

（ B ）4. A.　B.

（ B ）5. A.　B.

三 听录音，选择正确的答语。（10 分）

（ B ）1. A. Yes, there is a cow.　　B. No, there aren't.

（ A ）2. A. There are three.　　B. There is a bed and a table in it.

（ B ）3. A. It's a storybook.　　B. It's above the sofa.

（ A ）4. A. Cool!　　B. It's a nice day.

（ A ）5. A. Yes, there is.　　B. No, there aren't.

四 听录音，判断下列句子与你所听到的内容是（T）否（F）相符。（10 分）

（ T ）1. Let's go to the park to fly kites.

（ F ）2. There are some ducks in the park.

（ T ）3. There is a tall building on the small hill.

（ T ）4. There is a river between the mountains.

（ T ）5. There are some hens and cows on the farm.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 读句子，判断单词画线部分发音是（T）否（F）相同。（5 分）

（ T ）1. The mouse jumps down from a small house.

（ T ）2. Let's count. How many cows can you see?

（ F ）3. Today we talk about the boat. It's so beautiful.

（ T ）4. Look! There are so many flowers around the house.

（ T ）5. I don't like the small mouse. It has a small mouth.

六 根据提示，将句子补充完整。（10 分）

1. Are there **any** **tall** **buildings** （一些高楼） in your city?
2. There is a **river** in our hometown.
3. There aren't **any** **trees** （一些树） on the hill.
4. I can see two **lakes** （湖） in my city.
5. There are **some** **fish** （一些鱼） in the river.

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（ C ）1. The dog is between _____.
A. the box　　B. the boxs　　C. the boxes

（ B ）2. There _____ lots of flowers in the garden.
A. is　　B. are　　C. isn't

（ B ）3. Look! There _____ some red fish in the fishbowl.
A. is　　B. are　　C. aren't

（ C ）4. There are some clouds in the _____.
A. river　　B. hill　　C. sky

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 荣德基

(B) 5. Let's _____ to the KFC to eat hamburgers.

A. going　　B. go　　C. goes

八 用所给词的适当形式填空。(10 分)

1. Are (be) there any lakes on the hill?
2. How many sheep (sheep) are there on the farm?
3. —Would you like some (some) soup, too? —Yes, please.
4. There aren't any (some) tall buildings in the village.
5. Let's go swimming (swim).

九 根据图片提示，补全对话。(10 分)

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. —What's behind the house?
   —There are some mountains.
2. —Where is a river?
   —It's in the forest.
3. —Are there any ducks on the river?
   —Yes, there are.
4. —Is there a bridge over the river?
   —Yes, there is.
5. —Are there any rivers in your city?
   —No, there aren't.

十 阅读短文，完成任务。(15 分)

a. 阅读短文选择正确答案。(10 分)

There is a library near my home. It's a tall white building. The library is big and clean. There are many books in it. It's also very quiet. People often read books in it. And some students like to do their homework there on weekends. There is a garden in front of the library. It's very beautiful. You can see many flowers in it.

(A) 1. The library isn't _____ my home.

A. far from　　B. near　　C. far

(B) 2. What's the library like?

A. It's small and clean.　　B. It's big and quiet.　　C. It's big but not quiet.

(B) 3. Some students like to _____ in the library.

A. play games　　B. do their homework　　C. listen to music

(B) 4. The library is _____ the garden.

A. in front of　　B. behind　　C. far from

(C) 5. What's in the garden?

A. Many books.　　B. There are many trees.

C. There are many flowers.

b. 阅读短文，判断句子正 (T) 误 (F)。(5 分)

Hello, I'm Jerry. I'm from a village of Yunnan. It's in the south of China. It's warm all the year. I like my village. We have all kinds of birds in the different trees. And we have mountains around our village. We still have a beautiful river. Along the river, you can see flowers here and there. After the rain, we sometimes see rainbows. Welcome to our village.

(F) 1. Jerry's village is in the north of China.
(T) 2. There are birds, trees, mountains, a river and flowers in the village.
(T) 3. I can see rainbows after the rain.
(F) 4. It's hot in spring in Jerry's village.
(T) 5. The phrase "here and there" means "到处".

十一 写作。(10 分)

Jenny 周末和父母去美丽的乡村玩，现在她把自己所见的东西写给自己的好朋友 Tom，请帮她完成这封 email 吧！

要求：1. 条理清晰、语句通顺、书写规范。

2. 不少于 5 句话。

Dear Tom,



I go to a beautiful village with my parents. There are many trees, mountains, flowers and a river in the village. The river is long and clean. There are many fish in the river. There are many beautiful flowers beside the river, too. The air is so fresh. I like the village.

Yours,

Jenny

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

期末检测卷

时间：60 分钟　满分：100 分

题　号	听力（30 分）				笔试（70 分）								总分
	一	二	三	四	五	六	七	八	九	十	十一	十二	
得　分													

第一部分　听力（30 分）

听力测试

一 听录音，判断下列图片与你所听到的内容是（T）否（F）相符。（5 分）

1. （ F ）　2. （ T ）　3. （ F ）　4. （ T ）　5. （ T ）

二 听录音，选择与所听内容相符的句子。（5 分）

（ B ）1. A. My school is in a forest.　B. My school is on a small hill.
C. My school is near the lake.

（ C ）2. A. There is a small building in my school.　B. There is a tall building in my school.
C. There isn't a tall building in my old school.

（ A ）3. A. My sister's favourite food is ice cream.
B. My mother's favourite food is noodles.
C. My father's favourite food is chicken.

（ B ）4. A. My maths teacher is kind.　B. My maths teacher is strict.
C. My maths teacher is young.

（ C ）5. A. I often read books on the weekend.　B. I often draw pictures.
C. I often do the housework on the weekend.

三 听录音，根据所听到的对话选出正确的答案。（10 分）

（ B ）1. A. He's tall and strong.　B. He's short and strong.

（ A ）2. A. Sunday.　B. Thursday.

（ B ）3. A. He'd like to drink some coke.　B. He'd like to drink some orange juice.

（ B ）4. A. It's under the bed.　B. It's under the chair.

（ B ）5. A. She can dance.　B. She can swim and do some kung fu.

四 听录音，根据所听到的短文判断句子正（T）误（F）。（10 分）

（ F ）1. Mary is 11.

（ T ）2. Mary's favourite food is beef and vegetable salad.

（ F ）3. Mary's favourite subjects are art and English.

（ T ）4. Mary's favourite teacher is thin and funny.

（ T ）5. Mary often watches TV on the weekend.

第二部分　笔试（70 分）

五 选出画线部分发音不同的一项，将答案填在题前括号内。（5 分）

（ A ）1. A. bread　B. teacher　C. eat　D. east

（ C ）2. A. now　B. down　C. window　D. flower

（ A ）3. A. yes　B. candy　C. sunny　D. friendly

（ C ）4. A. cook　B. foot　C. food　D. good

（ D ）5. A. about　B. cloud　C. sound　D. would

六 选出不同类的一项。（10 分）

（ C ）1. A. music　B. maths　C. fresh　D. English

（ D ）2. A. write　B. wash　C. play　D. photo

（ A ）3. A. village　B. tree　C. river　D. flower

（ C ）4. A. fish　B. beef　C. food　D. pork

（ C ）5. A. funny　B. sunny　C. candy　D. shy

七 单项选择。（10 分）

（ C ）1. What's _____ favourite food?
A. he　B. he's　C. her

（ C ）2. Do you often _____ in the park?
A. read book　B. play *pipa*　C. play basketball

（ C ）3. There aren't _____ rivers in my city.
A. some　B. lots　C. any

（ B ）4. His grandparents _____ a garden in front of their house.
A. has　B. have　C. does have

（ C ）5. —_____ Lucy?　—She's in the classroom.
A. Who's　B. What's　C. Where's

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

典中点 绿德基

(A) 6. _____ Monday, we have an English class _____ 9: 00 _____ the morning.
A. On; at; in　　B. On; in; at　　C. In; at; on

(C) 7. Amy often _____ TV on Friday evening.
A. watch　　B. looks　　C. watches

(C) 8. There _____ some water in the glass and there _____ some eggs on the plate.
A. is; is　　B. are; are　　C. is; are

(B) 9. —Are there any fish in the water?　—_____
A. Yes, they are.　　B. Yes, there are.　　C. No, there are.

(B) 10. —What _____ you like to eat?　—I like to eat beef.
A. would　　B. do　　C. are

八 根据图片提示，补全对话。(10 分)

1. 　2. 　3. 　4. 　5. 

1. —Where is the girl?　—__She's between the balls.__
2. —What do you have on Mondays?　—__I have maths and English.__
3. —What's Miss White's favourite food?　—__Her favourite food is sandwiches.__
4. —__Can he play basketball?__　—Yes, he can.
5. —What does your sister often do on the weekend?　—__She often washes her clothes.__

九 补全对话。(10 分)

Amy: 1. __D__
Sarah: Good idea!
Amy: 2. __E__
Sarah: He's Yang Liwei.
Amy: 3. __B__
Sarah: He's very brave (勇敢的) and clever.
Amy: Look at the moon!
Sarah: 4. __A__ Is there a river on the moon?
Amy: 5. __C__

A. How beautiful!
B. What's he like?
C. No, there isn't.
D. Let's watch TV.
E. Who's this man?

十 阅读短文，判断正 (T) 误 (F)。(5 分)

Our school is big and nice. When you come into our school, you can see two tall buildings. In the buildings there are two computer rooms, an art room, a music room, a library and many classrooms. I like to go to the library, because I like reading books. My teachers often tell us, "Reading is good for you." Near the buildings, there is a big playground.

We can play football, basketball and games on it. We are very happy.

There are many trees and flowers in our school. The trees are green and the flowers are lovely. The birds can sing in the trees.

Our school is beautiful. I like it very much.

(T) 1. Our school is big and beautiful.
(T) 2. I like reading books.
(T) 3. We can play football, basketball and games on the playground.
(F) 4. There are five buildings in our school.
(F) 5. "Reading is good for you." means "你们要读好书。".

十一 阅读理解。(12 分)

Hi, I'm David. I live in China now. I like the life here. I don't have much homework every day. I have many friends. After school, I can play sports with them. We often play ping-pong together. The food here is very good. I like carrots, beef and noodles. I also like to drink green tea. It's my favourite drink. My house isn't far from my school. And there's a big garden in front of my house. Every day I walk to school. I love China.

根据上文补全下面短文。

David __lives__ in China now. Every day, he __doesn't__ __have__ much homework. He likes sports. So he often __plays__ __ping-pong__ with his friends __after__ school. He also likes __Chinese__ food. And __green__ __tea__ is his favourite drink. His house is __near__ the school. So he goes to school __on__ __foot__ every day.

十二 本学期就要结束了，你对各科的老师一定都很了解了吧！请你根据下面的提示试着写一篇作文。(8 分)

提示：1. What's your favourite subject?　2. What's the teacher like?
3. What can the teacher do?　4. What's the teacher's favourite food?

__Hello, everyone. My name is Lily. My favourite subject is English. Miss Li is our English teacher. She's young and kind. But sometimes she's strict in her class. Her favourite food is vegetable salad. It's healthy. She's clever and she can do many things. She can sing and dance. She can play ping-pong, too. We all like her.__

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. He can swim. 4. Can she speak English?
三、1. E 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. D
四、1. Jenny can't play the piano.
点拨：变否定句时，can 后面加“not”，缩写为 can't。
2. What can Tony do?
3. I can play basketball and football.
五、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. C

课时练 7 Part C Story time

一、(一) 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
(二) 1. The snake is hungry.
2. can sing, dance and swim
3. Yes, he can.
4. The snake is silly.
5. Yes, he is.
(三) 1. C 点拨：中国的国球是乒乓球。
2. A 点拨：中国功夫在世界上是独一无二的。
3. C 点拨：西班牙的代表运动是斗牛表演和足球。
二、(一) 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. F 5. T
(二) 1. Zhang Peng 2. Chen Jie
3. Jenny 4. Amy 5. Wu Yifan

培优练 周末主题素养练 (二)

听力材料：
一、**Zip**：I can dance, sing songs and play the *pipa*.
Zoom：Great! You can be a music teacher. I can play football and basketball. I can do kung fu, too. So I can be a PE teacher.
二、1. My pen pal is a Chinese boy. He likes sports. He can play football.
2. Anna is from London. She can speak English well.
3. Chen Jie is a helpful girl. She can cook dinner with her mother.
4. Lynn is a little girl. She likes watching swimming. But she can't swim.
5. Jerry can play ping-pong well.
三、1. What can your mother do?
2. Can your brother sing English songs?
3. Who can make mooncakes?

答案：
一、1. A D F; a music teacher
2. B C E; a PE teacher
二、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、1. C 2. B 3. A
四、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. E
五、1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. C
六、范文：
I have three new friends this term. John can't play football, but he can play ping-pong. Amy can't play the piano, but she can play the *pipa*. Mike can't speak English, but he can swim.
七、1. I can play football, but I can't swim.
2. Can you do any kung fu?
3. What can you do?

Unit 5 There is a big bed

课时练 1 Part A Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：
五、1. There is a teddy bear on the bed.
2. The photo is near the window.
3. There is a computer on the table.
4. There is a desk on the floor.

答案：
一、1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
二、1. B 2. B
3. C 点拨：pictures 是可数名词复数，所以后面的 be 动词用 are。
4. B 点拨：he 是第三人称单数，后面接的动词加 -s/-es。
三、1. under 2. on 3. in 4. near
四、1. have 2. What's
3. is 4. There 5. tidy
听 五、bed; photo; computer; table; desk

课时练 2 Part A Let's learn ~ Let's play

一、1. A 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. A
二、1. bike 2. clock 3. photo 4. plant 5. water bottle
三、1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A
四、1. There is a plant in my room.
2. There is a table and a chair in the kitchen.
3. What's in your classroom?
4. There is a lamp and books on the desk.
五、1. bed 2. lamp 3. teddy bear
4. table
方法点拨：此题用寻读关键词法解答。先阅读题干，找出题干中的关键词，再根据关键词在短文中寻读出关键句，通过阅读关键句找出答案。如第 1 小题，题干中的关键词有：in my room；blue。根据关键词可在短文中寻找出关键句是短文第二句“There is a new blue bed in my room.”即可得出答案填 bed。

课时练 3 Part A Let's spell

一、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. C 5. C
二、Today; day; play; way; paint; rainbow; make; birthday; cake; wait
方法点拨：此题用分类记忆法解答。将含发音/eɪ/的字母组合及其单词分类在一起记忆。如：a-e：make, take, cake …；ai：wait, rain, paint …；ay：play, may, today…。
三、1. C 2. C 3. B 4. C
四、1 7 2 3 4 5 6 8
五、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. B

培优练 周末主题素养练 (一)

听力材料：
一、1. There is a sofa near the window.
2. My bed is blue. It looks like a car.
3. There is a cat under the desk.
4. There is a picture on the wall.
二、1. —Sam, what's in your bedroom?
—There is a toy car in my bedroom.
2. —What's in your living room? Is there a clock in it?
—No, there is a plant.
3. —What's in your kitchen?
—There's a clock.
4. —Is there a bookshelf in your study?
—Yes, and there is a photo, too.
三、Hello, everyone! This is my living room. It's very big and beautiful. There is a TV, a sofa and some plants in it. The sofa is gray. It's nice. It's in front of the TV. The TV is on the table. There are some pictures of my family on the wall. The wall is blue and white. It looks like the sky and clouds. It's very beautiful.

答案：
一、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B
二、1—D 2—A 3—B 4—C
三、1. B 2. B 3. C
四、3 4 2 1
五、1. C 点拨：根据“The bed is on top, and the desk is under the bed.”可知选 C。
2. A 3. A 4. C 5. B
6. A 点拨：根据邮件地址“To：Steven@urfriend.cn”可知是写给 Steven 的，故选 A。
7. B
六、范文：
Look at this new room. It's Jenny's. It's clean and nice. There is a bed, a desk and a chair in the room. There is a computer and a clock on the desk. Her schoolbag is on the bed. There is a picture of her family on the wall. Do you like her room?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

课时练 4　Part B　Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：

五、1. There is a bed in my room.
2. There is an apple tree near the river.
3. There are many flowers in the garden.
4. There are some books in front of the computer.

答案：

一、1. F　2. T　3. T

二、1. C　**点拨：**表示“许多”可以用 lots of 或 a lot of。
2. C　**方法点拨：**此题用**排除法**解答。books 为可数名词复数，much 修饰不可数名词，故排除 B，any 用于一般疑问句或否定句，故排除 A。many 后加可数名词复数。
3. C　**点拨：**their 是形容词性物主代词，后面接名词，故选 C。
4. B　5. B

三、1. is　2. are　3. is　4. is　5. are
点拨：在 there be 结构中，be 动词的形式由紧挨着的名词决定，如果是可数名词单数或不可数名词，则用 is，如果是可数名词复数，则用 are。

四、1. D　2. E　3. C　4. B　5. A

听 五、从左至右：2　3　1　4

课时练 5　Part B　Let's learn ~ Find and say

一、1. B　2. A　3. C　4. D
A. between　B. beside　C. behind　D. above

二、1. Where is the woman? She's beside the car.
2. Where is the girl? She's between the bags.
3. There is a ball between the dogs.
4. There are two boys in front of the car.

三、2　1　3　7　6　5　4

四、1. Where is the bike?
2. What is in front of the garden?
3. There are balls under the desk.
4. Is there a doll on the bed?

五、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. F　5. T

课时练 6　Part B
Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、am；is；is；are；are；are

二、1. beside　2. under　3. behind
4. above　5. in front of　6. between

三、1. T　2. T　3. F

四、（一）1. eight　2. small but warm　3. Amy
（二）圈 B

课时练 7　Part C　Story time

一、（一）1. NO　2. NO　3. NO　4. YES　5. YES
（二）1. C　**点拨：**垃圾箱有 4 种。
2.（1）B　（2）A　（3）D　（4）C

二、（一）1. There is a new air conditioner, a new sofa, a TV and a bright light in the living room.
2. On the shelf.　3. In the kitchen.
（二）4. C

培优练　周末主题素养练　（二）

听力材料：

一、1. There is a clock above the sofa.
2. There is a water bottle on the desk.
3. There is a plant beside the window.
4. There is a photo in front of the bed.

二、1. —Is there a desk in your room?
—Yes, there is.
2. —Is there a cat in your room?
—No, there isn't.
3. —What's in the kitchen?
—There is a table and four chairs.
4. —Is there a picture on the wall?
—No, there is a map on the wall.
5. I like plants, so I put two plants beside the door.

三、1. How many bedrooms are there in your home?
2. Are there any plants in your room?
3. Where is the chair?
4. Is your room big?

答案：

一、1—a—D　2—d—B　3—b—C　4—c—A

二、1. T　2. F　3. F　4. F　5. T

三、1. C　2. B　3. C　4. A

四、1、5 题括号内写 T

五、1. are　2. is　3. is　4. are　5. on
6. clock　7. front　8. like

六、（一）1. T　2. F　3. F　4. T　5. T
（二）3　2　1　5　6　4

七、范文：
Look, this is my room. It's small, but nice. There is a bed, a table and a chair in it. The table is near the window. I often read books and do my homework on it. There is a small clock on the table. There are some pictures on the wall. They are nice. I like my room.

Unit 6　In a nature park

课时练 1　Part A　Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：

五、This is a picture of the nature park. There are trees and flowers everywhere. There is a lake in the middle of the park. Beside the lake, there is a big mountain. There is a small house near the lake.

答案：

一、1. B　2. A　3. D　4. C

二、1. A　2. C　3. C　4. B
5. B　**点拨：**go boating 为固定搭配。

三、1. there is　2. Yes; there is　3. No; there isn't

四、1. B　2. E　3. C　4. A　5. D

听 五、略

课时练 2　Part A
Let's learn ~ Draw and ask

一、1. river　2. forest　3. mountain　4. lake　5. hill

二、1. Is there a bridge in the city? Yes, there is.
2. Is there a building in the village? Yes, there is.

三、1. Is there a farm in your village?
点拨：陈述句变一般疑问句时，注意 be 动词提前，my 变成 your。
2. No, there isn't.
3. There is a nature park in my city.
4. What's on the river?

四、2　4　1　3

五、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. F　5. T

课时练 3　Part A　Let's spell

一、1. C　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A

二、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. F　5. T

三、1. cow　2. mouse; house　3. count　4. clouds

四、1. B
2. B　**点拨：**fish 单复数相同。
3. B　4. B
5. B　**点拨：**clouds 是复数，故选 B。

五、（一）1. F　2. F
（二）3. There are some tall trees.
4. No, there isn't.
5. Yes, there is.

培优练　周末主题素养练　（一）

听力材料：

一、1. There is a lake in my hometown.
2. There is a forest in my hometown.
3. There are many mountains in it.
4. There is a river in front of the mountains.
5. There is a hill beside the lake.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

二、1. —Is there a mountain in your village?
—No, but there is a hill.
2. —Is there a farm in your village?
—Yes, there is.
3. —Is there a forest in your village?
—Yes, there is.
4. —Is there a lake in your village?
—No, there is a river around my village.
三、1. Welcome to Beijing. It's the capital city of China.
2. There are many tall buildings in it.
3. There is the Great Wall in Beijing. It's very long.

答案：
一、3 4 2 5 1
二、1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B
三、1. A 2. A 3. A
四、1. river 连 B 2. forest 连 C 3. farm 连 D
4. mountains 连 A
五、1. Yes, there is. 2. No, there isn't. 3. are
4. mountains 5. Is 6. river 7. clean
8. fish 9. flowers
六、1. It's beside the lake. 2. No, there isn't.
3. There are some ducks and boats on the lake.
七、范文：
Hello, this is the nature park of my village. There is a lake in it. There are many ducks on the lake. There is a forest in it, too. There are some houses in front of the forest. I like the park.
八、1. —Is there a lake in your city?
—Yes, there is. /No, there isn't.
2. —Is there a mountain in your hometown?
—Yes, there is. /No, there isn't.

课时练4 Part B Let's try ~ Let's talk

听力材料：
五、1. —Are there any tall buildings near the park?
—Yes , there are.
2. —Is there a bridge on the lake?
—No, there are some trees near the lake.
3. —Is there a house in the village?
—Yes, there are some animals, too.
4. —Are there any ducks on the river?
—Yes, there are some rabbits beside it, too.

答案：
一、1. Are there 2. There is
3. Is there 4. There is 5. Are there
6. There are **点拨：** there be 句型中 be 动词的单复数形式由后面挨近的一项的单复数决定。
二、1. B **点拨：** any 一般用在疑问句或否定句中，修饰可数名词或不可数名词。some 一般用在肯定句中，修饰可数或不可数名词。
2. B **点拨：** people 是集合名词，作主语时谓语动词用复数形式。
3. A
4. B **点拨：** water 是不可数名词，be 动词用 is，疑问句中用 any。
三、1. Yes, there is. 2. No, there aren't.
3. Yes, there are. 4. No, there isn't.
四、1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T
听 五、1. C 2. B 3. A F 4. D E

课时练5 Part B Let's learn ~ Write and say

一、1. ou B 2. i; a; e C 3. ri; e A 4. ui; ing D
二、1. are; on; tree 2. Is; house; tree
3. Are; buildings; river 4. is; bridge; over; river
5. are; houses
三、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. E 5. C
四、1. The nature park is so quiet!
2. There aren't any eggs on the plate.
点拨： 肯定句变否定句，在 be 动词后加 not，some 变 any。
3. What's in the park?
4. Are there any fish in the river?
点拨： 陈述句变一般疑问句时，be 动词提前，some 变 any。
五、1. but 2. lake 3. river 4. flowers 5. bridge
6. over 7. Beside 8. lots 9. trees 10. love

课时练6 Part B Read and write ~ Let's wrap it up

一、1. are 2. Are; any cows 3. is; chicken
4. Is; building 5. isn't; bridge
二、1. bridge 2. building
3. village; houses 4. any trees; lake
三、1. D 2. E 3. C 4. A 5. B
四、1. It's at the foot of the mountain.
2. No, there aren't.
3. He often catches the fish with his friends.
4. There is a mountain, small houses, trees, a small river and flowers in the village.
5. 在山脚下

课时练7 Part C Story time

一、(一) 1. NO 2. NO 3. NO 4. NO 5. YES
(二) 1. They go to a nature park.
2. No, there aren't.
3. A koala is in the tree.
4. The card is broken.
(三) 1. C 2. A
二、(一) 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T
(二) B

培优练 周末主题素养练 (二)

听力材料：
一、1. —Is there a bridge here? —Yes.
2. There is a building in the village.
3. There is a house in the tree.
4. Are there any rivers on the mountain?
二、1. There is a big mountain in the village.
2. There is a lake in the park.
3. There are many trees in the park.
4. There are many houses in front of the mountain.
5. There is a bridge over the river.
三、Hello! This is our village. There are many houses in the village and there are some mountains behind the village. There is a lake in front of them. Can you find it?
四、My hometown is a small village. There is a long river in front of the village. The water is clean. We often swim in it. There is a new bridge over the river. There are some beautiful flowers beside the river. There are high mountains behind the village. My house is under the tree. So I like to read books under the tree.

答案：
一、1. C 2. B 3. B 4. C
二、1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T
三、圈 B
四、1. village 2. river 3. bridge
4. mountains 5. behind 6. house
五、在 2、4、5 小题括号内写 T
六、1. D 2. B 3. C 4. E 5. A
七、4 3 2 1
八、范文：
I'm Lily. I live in a small town in the USA. There are many tall buildings in our town. There is no river in it. But there are many new roads in it. There are many buses and cars on the roads every day. There are many trees and flowers beside the roads. There is a nature park in our town. We often fly kites in it. I like my town.
九、1. —Are there any rabbits in the forest?
—Yes, there are. /No, there aren't.
2. —Is there a building in the village?
—Yes, there is. /No, there isn't.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Recycle 2

阶段复习练　Units 4～6

一、1. H　2. E　3. C　4. B　5. F　6. A　7. G　8. D
二、1. A　2. B　3. C　4. B　5. C
三、1. E　2. B　3. A　4. D　5. C
四、1. There is a bed in the bedroom.
2. He can speak English.
3. play football　4. lake　5. Apples; sweet
五、1. C　2. D　3. E　4. B　5. A
六、1. E　2. D　3. C　4. B　5. A
七、1. Where is the ball?
2. What can Tom do?
3. I can't dance.
4. Can you wash your clothes?
5. I have an English class at one o'clock.
八、1. party　2. for　3. English
4. the　5. cartoons　6. our
九、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. F　5. T
十、范文：

Hello, I'm Jenny. I live in a big city now. It's very beautiful. There are many tall buildings in it. There is a big school in it too. The road is wide. There are many cars, buses and taxis on the road. There are many trees beside the road. I like the city. Do you like it?

Unit 1　基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. old　2. young　3. funny　4. kind
5. strict　6. 知道；了解
二、1. art teacher　2. science teacher
3. maths teacher　4. head teacher
三、1. Who is he? He's our music teacher.
2. Who is your English teacher?
3. Is he young?

Part B

一、1. polite　2. helpful　3. clever　4. shy　5. hard-working
6. 女士　7. 将要　8. 有时；间或　9. 机器人
10. 会说；会讲（某种语言）　11. 完成；做好
二、1. What's Wu Yifan like? He's very polite.
2. He is very helpful.
3. 他的名字是罗宾。

Unit 2　基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. Monday　2. Tuesday　3. Wednesday　4. Thursday
5. Friday　6. Saturday　7. Sunday　8. weekend
9. 烹饪；烹调
二、1. 看看我的照片。
2. What do you have on Tuesdays?
We have maths, English and music.
3. I have a cooking class with your grandma.

Part B

一、1. wash my clothes　2. watch TV　3. do homework
4. read books　5. play football　6. 时常；常常
7. 公园　8. 疲倦的　9. 做体育运动
10. 每一天　11. 工作计划；日程安排
二、1. Do you often wash your clothes on the weekend?
Yes, I do.
2. Do you often play sports?
No, I don't. I don't like sports.
3. Wu Yifan often reads books on the weekend.

Unit 3　基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. ice cream　2. hamburger　3. tea　4. sandwich
5. salad　6. bread　7. chicken　8. rice　9. water
10. beef noodles　11. orange juice　12. vegetable
二、1. 我饿了。
2. What would you like to eat? A sandwich, please.
3. What would you like to drink? I would like some tea.

Part B

一、1. fresh　2. delicious　3. healthy
4. hot　5. sweet　6. 洋葱
二、1. 我最喜欢的食物　2. 她最喜欢的饮料
三、1. What's your favourite food?
I like beef noodles. They are delicious.
2. Sarah's favourite food is fish.

Unit 4　基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. dance　2. sing English songs　3. do kung fu
4. draw pictures　5. play the *pipa*　6. draw cartoons
二、1. 下周二我们要开一个英语聚会。
2. What can you do for the party, children?
I can sing English songs.
3. Who can dance?

Part B

一、1. swim　2. speak English　3. cook　4. play basketball
5. play ping-pong　6. 极好的；了不起的
7. 学；学习；学会　8. 没问题　9. 发送电子邮件
二、1. Can you do any kung fu? Yes, I can.
2. Can you speak English? No, I can't.
3. I can't play the *pipa*.

Unit 5　基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. clock　2. photo　3. plant　4. bike
5. water bottle　6. 表示存在或发生
二、1. 你的房间真漂亮！
2. There is a big bed.
3. My computer is on the desk.
4. There is a clock, a plant and a photo in my room.

Part B

一、1. in front of　2. beside　3. between　4. behind
5. above　6. 房屋；房子；住宅　7. 我祖母的花
8. 大量；许多　9. 搬家　10. 肮脏的
11. 处处；到处
二、1. Where is the ball? It's between the dogs.
2. There are pictures and photos everywhere.

Unit 6　基础默写卡

Part A

一、1. forest　2. mountain　3. hill　4. river
5. lake　6. park
二、1. in the forest　2. 去划船　3. in the park
4. in front of the mountain
三、1. Let's go to the forest!
2. Is there a river in the forest? No, there isn't.
3. Is there a lake in the park?
Yes, there is. There are some small boats there.

Part B

一、1. village　2. tree　3. bridge　4. house
5. building　6. 兔；野兔　7. 高的
二、1. Are there any tall buildings in the nature park?
No, there aren't.
2. Are there any lakes on the mountains?
Yes, there are.

检测卷部分

Unit 1 达标检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. Do you know Mrs Li?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

2. I have a new maths teacher.
3. My sister is a little shy.
4. Please be quiet in the library.
5. I'm very thin. I want to be strong.

二、1. Look! They're helpful.
2. —Who's that woman?
—She's our new music teacher.
3. It's windy today.
4. —Is she your Chinese teacher?
—Yes, she is.
5. My little brother is shy.

三、1. Do you know Mr Hu?
2. Who is your Chinese teacher?
3. What's your brother like?
4. My maths teacher is Miss Guo, our head teacher.
5. Is your sister shy?

四、This term, we'll have two new teachers. Mr Black will be our maths teacher. He's tall and strong. He looks cool. His class is very funny. We all like him. Miss Green will be our Chinese teacher. She's hard-working and clever. Sometimes she's strict, but she's kind to us.

答案：
一、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. A
二、1. T 2. F 3. T 4. T 5. F
三、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. C
四、teachers; Black; strong; looks; funny; Chinese; hard-working; clever; strict; kind
五、1. D 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. C
六、1. old 2. clever 3. hard-working 4. polite 5. strong
七、1. A 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. B
八、1. funny 2. young 3. strong; clever 4. old
九、1. B 2. E 3. C 4. D 5. A
十、1. Is your English teacher young?
2. Who is your science teacher?
3. Mr Hu will be our new Chinese teacher.
4. No, she isn't.
5. What's your art teacher like?
十一、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
十二、1. He's tall and a little strong. He's hard-working, too. He's polite and shy.
2. Yes, he is. 3. Mr Zhang.
4. She's funny and young. 5. Yes, he is.
十三、范文：

My good friend

I have a good friend. Her name is Lily. She is a tall and beautiful girl. She wears glasses. She is very helpful. She often helps me with my study.

Unit 2 达标检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. Thursday 2. maths 3. read
4. play basketball 5. wash your clothes
二、1. What do you have on Thursdays?
2. —Do you wash your clothes on the weekend? —Yes, I do.
3. We have English on Mondays.
4. —Do you like sports? —Yes, I like football best.
5. —What do you often do after school?
—I often read books.
三、1. What day is it today?
2. Do you have science on Tuesdays?
3. What do you often do after school?
4. What's this?
5. I like sports.
四、1. I like Wednesdays. What about you?
2. —Do you often clean your room?
—Yes, I often clean it on the weekend.
3. —What do you often do?
—I often play basketball with my friends.
4. —Do you like watching TV?
—Yes, I do.
5. —Do you play ping-pong after school?
—No, I must do my homework first.

答案：
一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. C 5. B
二、1. B 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B
三、1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. A
四、5 2 1 4 3
五、1. A 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. C
六、1. play football 2. Wednesdays 3. does his homework
4. play sports 5. watches TV
七、1. B 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. C
八、1. What; you; do 2. Do; clean your 3. No; I don't
4. She usually draws pictures on Mondays.
5. I have a cooking class with my grandpa.
九、**a.** 1. B 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. B
b. 1. It's busy. 2. She often draws pictures.
3. No, she doesn't.
4. Because it can make her healthy.
5. Yes, she does.
十、范文：

Hello, I'm Jenny. This is my schedule. I wash my clothes on Sundays. I have Chinese and English on Mondays. I have music and art on Tuesdays. I have PE and science on Wednesdays. I have a dancing class on Thursdays. I have a swimming class on Fridays. I do my homework on Saturdays. What do you do in a week?

Unit 3 达标检测卷

听力材料：
一、1. thirsty 2. salad 3. cow 4. food 5. should
二、1. I'd like a hamburger.
2. A sandwich, please.
3. Would you like some salad?
4. They're fresh vegetables.
5. Here's some milk.
三、1. Happy birthday!
2. Would you like some water?
3. What would you like to drink?
4. What would your brother like to eat?
5. What's your mother's favourite food?
四、**W**: Hello, I'm Betty. It's time for lunch. I can see some food on the table. Look at the tomatoes. They're healthy. The beef noodles are hot. The chicken is delicious. What about the salad? It's very fresh. And the ice cream is sweet. It's my favourite.

答案：
一、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. B
二、1. A 2. B 3. B 4. A 5. B
三、1. B
2. A **点拨**：Would you like ...? 有两种回答：Yes, please! / No, thanks., 故选 A。
3. A 4. C
5. B **点拨**：注意听关键词 your mother's，女性用 her，所以选 B。
四、lunch; food; tomatoes; healthy; noodles; hot; delicious; salad; fresh; sweet
五、1. D 2. C 3. C 4. C 5. A
六、1. B 2. B
3. C **点拨**：A，B 都是食物，是名词，C 是形容词，故选 C。
4. C 5. C
七、1. B **点拨**：apples 是复数，故 be 动词用 are。
2. C **点拨**：What would you like to drink? 是固定句型。
3. B 4. A
5. C **点拨**：ice cream 是甜的，所以选 C。
八、1. sandwiches 2. Tomatoes are 3. would; drink; I'd; juice
4. noodles; They're 5. ice cream; It's
九、1. What's your favourite vegetable?
2. I'd like some milk. 3. I don't like onions.
4. Her favourite colour is blue.
5. Sarah's favourite food is fish.
十、**a.** 1. B
2. B **点拨**：根据 Xinjiang food is famous for（因……闻名）mutton kebabs. 新疆食物以羊肉串闻名，可

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

知选 B。
3. C 4. C 5. B

b. 1. From Monday to Friday.
2. No, I don't.
3. I have eggs with tomatoes and rice on Thursdays and Fridays.
4. My favourite drink is milk.
5. I need to eat more vegetables.

十一、范文：

My favourite food

Hello, I'm Tommy. I like different kinds of food. Ice cream is my favourite. My favourite meat is beef and chicken. They are delicious. Hamburgers are my favourite food, too. What about fruit? My favourite fruit is bananas. They are healthy.

期中检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. strong 2. Sundays 3. play the guitar
4. music 5. fruit

二、1. Amy reads books on Wednesdays.
2. I'd like some salad. It's healthy.
3. Look at that young lady. She's our new English teacher.
4. I have PE on Wednesdays.
5. John does his homework in the evening.

三、1. Do you know Mr Liu?
2. What do you have on Fridays?
3. Do you often read books?
4. Would you like some tea?
5. What's your favourite drink?

四、1. My brother is a hard-working boy. He likes to read books.
2. —What's your favourite food?
—Ice cream. It's sweet.
3. —Do you often play football after school? —Yes, I do.
4. What do you do on Thursdays?
5. I'm hungry. I'd like some sandwiches. They're delicious.

答案：

一、1. A 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A
二、3 1 5 2 4
三、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. A
四、1. hard-working 2. Ice cream; sweet 3. play football
4. Thursdays 5. sandwiches; delicious
五、1. C 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. C
六、1. C 2. A 3. B 4. C 5. B
七、1. salad **点拨：** some + 不可数名词/可数名词复数，salad 是不可数名词，故填 salad。
2. helpful 3. Wednesdays
4. does her homework 5. healthy
八、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. C 5. B
九、1. B 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. E
十、1. Is your sister shy?
2. What do you have for lunch?
3. What's her favourite food?
4. I don't play football on Mondays.
5. I would like to have some milk.
十一、She; beautiful; Her; delicious; but; eats; doesn't; with; and; likes
十二、1. T 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T
十三、范文：

Our new teacher

This is our new Chinese teacher, Miss Li. She's young and tall. She is only 30 years old. She's kind to us, but sometimes she's strict in her class. She likes playing ping-pong. We often play it together after school. Her favourite food is salad. It's healthy. She's a good teacher. We all like her.

Unit 4 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. draw cartoons 2. sing Chinese songs 3. play football
4. do the housework 5. cook

二、1. —Can you do any kung fu? —No, but I can dance.
2. —What can the girl do? —She can draw pictures.
3. —Can your mother play the *pipa*? —Yes, she can.
4. —What can the boy do? —He can swim very well.
5. —What can the girl do? —She can clean the room.

三、1. —Can you speak Chinese? —Yes, I can speak English, too.
Question: What can you do?
2. Can you fly kites?
3. Who can play football?
4. I can play with the yo-yo.
5. I can't make the bed.

四、1. **M:** Hi, Kitty, who can play ping-pong in your class?
W: Zhang Peng.
2. **M:** Who's that tall man?
W: He's Mr Smith, our art teacher.
3. **W:** What can you do for the party, Jack?
M: I can play the *pipa*.
4. **W:** What can you do, Robot?
M: I can play chess.
5. **W:** Hi, Zhang Peng, can you swim?
M: No, I can't. But I can play ping-pong.

答案：

一、1. B 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. B
二、1. A 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A
三、1. C 2. C 3. A 4. A 5. A
四、1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. C
五、1. DI 2. AG 3. BH 4. CF 5. EJ
六、1. B
2. B
3. B **点拨：** 球类名词前不加 the，乐器类名词前必加 the。
4. B
5. C **点拨：** but 表转折，故选 C。
七、1. Chinese 2. comes 3. can; can't 4. children 5. any
八、1. sing English songs 2. draw cartoons 3. play basketball
4. speak English 5. cook; can't
九、1. C 2. A 3. D 4. E 5. B
十、1. C 2. C 3. C 4. A 5. C
十一、范文：

Today is a sunny day. We're in the park. Look! My grandpa can do kung fu. He looks cool. My grandma can play the *erhu*. My father can play football. My mother can dance. This boy is me. I can draw cartoons.

Unit 5 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. There is a photo on the wall.
2. I can see a rainbow in the sky.
3. There are some trees behind my house.
4. I have a new water bottle.
5. There is a plant near the window.

二、1. There's a dog between the two boxes.
2. Above the bed, there are two photos.
3. —Where's the cat? —It's on the chair.
4. Look! There's a plant beside the window.
5. The bike is in front of the door.

三、1. Your bedroom is really nice.
2. Where is the TV?
3. What's in the bedroom?
4. Where is the chair?
5. How many apples are there on the plate?

四、1. There is a picture in my room.
2. The mouse is behind the desk.
3. There is a plant near the window.
4. There is a fan above my head.
5. I can see a red bike.

答案：

一、1. B 2. B 3. C 4. B 5. A
二、1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. F
三、1. A **点拨：** 对别人的称赞应该表示感谢，故选 A。
2. C **点拨：** 本题根据生活常识可知。TV 不可能在门

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

上，故选 C。
3. A
4. B　**点拨**：where 问位置，故选 B。
5. A　**点拨**：how many 问数量，故选 A。

四、1. picture　2. behind　3. plant　4. above　5. bike

五、1. T　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. F

六、1. have　2. is；has
3. are；Have　**点拨**：第一句为倒装句，主语是 today's specials，故 be 动词用 are。
4. There is　5. has；There are

七、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. B

八、1. is under the bed　2. There is；between the boxes
3. are you；behind the door　4. are；many flowers in
5. plant；near

九、1. There are many books on the table.
2. There aren't three birds in the tree.
3. My grandparents have a garden in front of their house.
4. What's on the wall?
5. They're under the bed.

十、**a.** 1. B　2. A　3. C　4. C　5. A
b. 1. It's a bedroom.
2. There is a shelf and many books.
3. She often plays the piano and reads books.
4. The clock is near the bed.
5. The waste bin is under the table.

Unit 6 达标检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. three　2. building　3. house　4. from　5. above

二、1. There is a river in our village.
2. —Is there a farm in your village?
—No, there is a bridge.
3. —Are there any tall buildings in your city?
—Yes, there are.
4. There are many hills in the park.
5. There are some trees beside the house.

三、1. Are there any mountains near the city?
2. How many rivers are there?
3. Where is the clock?
4. Let's go boating.
5. Is there a sofa in the living room?

四、1. —Let's fly kites!
—Cool! I know a new nature park. Let's go.
2. —Are there any ducks in the park?
—No, there are some boats.
3. —What's on the small hill?
—There is a tall building.
4. There is a river between the mountains.
5. —What's on the farm? Are there any hens?
—Yes, there are some cows, too.

答案：

一、1. A　2. C　3. B　4. B　5. B

二、1. A　2. B　3. A　4. B　5. B

三、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. A　5. A

四、1. T　2. F　3. T　4. T　5. T

五、1. T　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. T

六、1. any tall buildings　**点拨**：are + 复数，故 building + s，一般疑问句 some 变 any，故答案是：any tall buildings。
2. river　3. any trees　4. lakes　5. some fish

七、1. C　2. B　3. B　4. C　5. B

八、1. Are　2. sheep
3. some　**点拨**：Would you like…句型中仍用 some。
4. any　5. swimming

九、1. There are some mountains.　2. It's in the forest.
3. Are there any ducks on the river?
4. Is there a bridge over the river?　5. No, there aren't.

十、**a.** 1. A　2. B　3. B　4. B　5. C
b. 1. F　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. T

十一、范文：

Dear Tom,

I go to a beautiful village with my parents. There are many trees, mountains, flowers and a river in the village. The river is long and clean. There are many fish in the river. There are many beautiful flowers beside the river, too. The air is so fresh. I like the village.

Yours,
Jenny

期末检测卷

听力材料：

一、1. Mrs Brown is short and thin.
2. I'd like a hamburger, an egg and milk for breakfast.
3. They can sing and dance for the party.
4. There's a bottle between the two plants.
5. —Is there a river in front of the mountain?
—Yes, there is.

二、1. My school is on a small hill.
2. There isn't a tall building in my old school.
3. My sister's favourite food is ice cream.
4. My maths teacher is strict.
5. I often do the housework on the weekend.

三、1. —Is your PE teacher tall?
—No, he's short, but strong.
Question: What's the PE teacher like?
2. —Do you like Thursday, Amy?
—Yes, but my favourite day is Sunday.
Question: What's Amy's favourite day?
3. —Zhang Peng, would you like some orange juice?
—Yes, please.
Question: What would Zhang Peng like to drink?
4. —Can you see a cat?
—Yes, it's under the chair.
Question: Where is the cat?
5. —Can you swim, Sarah?
—Yes, I can do kung fu, too.
Question: What can Sarah do?

四、**W**: My name's Mary. I'm a twelve-year-old girl. I'm a student. Beef and vegetable salad are my favourite food. I have maths and art on Tuesdays. They're my favourite subjects. And Mr Li is my favourite teacher. He's thin and funny. He teaches us art. On the weekend, I often watch TV. I like watching cartoons.

答案：

一、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. T

二、1. B　2. C　3. A　4. B　5. C

三、1. B　2. A　3. B　4. B　5. B

四、1. F　2. T　3. F　4. T　5. T

五、1. A　2. C　3. A　4. C　5. D

六、1. C　2. D　3. A　4. C　5. C

七、1. C　2. C　3. C　4. B　5. C
6. A　7. C　8. C　9. B
10. B　**点拨**：因为答句是“I like…”，故只能问“What do you like…?”。

八、1. She's between the balls.
2. I have maths and English.
3. Her favourite food is sandwiches.
4. Can he play basketball?
5. She often washes her clothes.

九、1. D　2. E　3. B　4. A　5. C

十、1. T　2. T　3. T　4. F　5. F

十一、lives；doesn't have；plays ping-pong；after；Chinese；green tea；near；on foot

十二、范文：

Hello, everyone. My name is Lily. My favourite subject is English. Miss Li is our English teacher. She's young and kind. But sometimes she's strict in her class. Her favourite food is vegetable salad. It's healthy. She's clever and she can do many things. She can sing and dance. She can play ping-pong, too. We all like her.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基 主编

典中点®

综合应用创新题 典中点

一本在做题中教会你学习方法的书

名师划重点



五年级 英语

上（PEP版）

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料



目录 contents

Unit 1 What's he like?

Part A ····· 2

Part B ····· 3

Unit 2 My week

Part A ····· 7

Part B ····· 8

Unit 3 What would you like?

Part A ····· 12

Part B ····· 13

Unit 4 What can you do?

Part A ····· 17

Part B ····· 18

Unit 5 There is a big bed

Part A ····· 22

Part B ····· 23

Unit 6 In a nature park

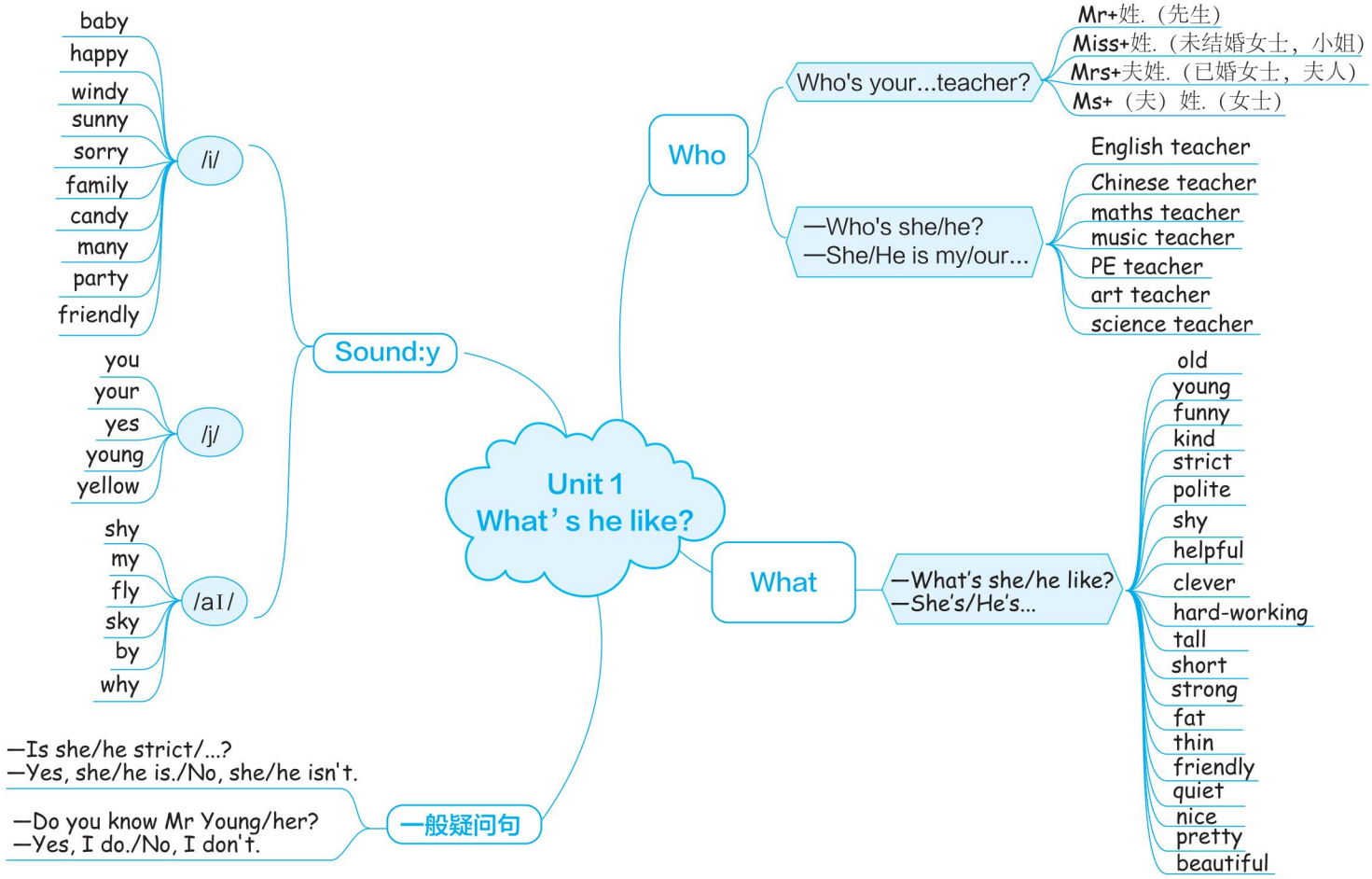
Part A ····· 27

Part B ····· 28

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 1 What's he like?

★ 单元知识导图



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. old 老的；年纪大的
2. young 年轻的；岁数不大的
3. funny 滑稽的；可笑的
4. kind 体贴的；慈祥的；宽容的
5. strict 要求严格的；严厉的

反义词记忆法：

把意义相反的单词归纳在一起记忆单词的方法就是反义词记忆法。如：

young（年轻的） – old（老的）；big（大的） – small（小的）；long（长的） – short（短的）

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Is he young? 他年轻吗？
   —Yes, he is. /No, he isn't. 是的，他年轻。/不，他不年轻。
2. —Who's your art teacher? 谁是你的美术老师？
   —Mr Jones. 琼斯先生。
3. Do you know Mr Young? 你认识杨老师吗？

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Wu Yifan: Do you know Mr Young?	吴一凡：你认识杨老师吗？
Oliver: No, I don't. Who is he?	奥利弗：不，我不认识。他是谁？
Wu Yifan: He's our music teacher.	吴一凡：他是我们的音乐老师。
Oliver: Is he young?	奥利弗：他年轻吗？
Wu Yifan: No, he isn't. He's old.	吴一凡：不，他不年轻了。他老了。
Oliver: Is he funny?	奥利弗：他滑稽吗？
Wu Yifan: Yes, he is.	吴一凡：是的，他滑稽。
Oliver: Great! I like funny teachers.	奥利弗：好极了！我喜欢滑稽的老师。

考点突破营

1. 询问某人是否具有某种体貌特征或性格特点的句型及答语

   问句：Be 动词 + 主语 + 表示体貌特征或性格特点的形容词？其中 be 动词的形式取决于句子

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

的主语。

肯定回答：Yes, 主语 + be 动词. 否定回答：No, 主语 + be 动词 + not.

例句：—Is he short? 他矮吗？

—No, he isn't. 不，他不矮。

2. who 引导的特殊疑问句

"Who is...?" 是一个由 who 引导的特殊疑问句，用来询问人的姓名、身份等。其答语常是一个人的姓名、身份等。who's = who is 意为"是谁"。

例句：—Who's that young man? 那个年轻人是谁？

—He's my brother. 他是我哥哥。

易错点提示

who's 与 whose

who's = who is	意为"是谁"，用来询问人的姓名、身份等。	—Who's that man? 那个男人是谁？ —He's my uncle. 他是我的叔叔。
whose	意为"谁的"，用来询问人/物的归属。	—Whose house is that? 那是谁的房子？ —It's my uncle's. 它是我叔叔的。

3. Do you know Mr Young?

这是一个以 do 开头的一般疑问句，它的句子结构是：Do you + 动词原形 + 其他?

肯定回答：Yes, I do. 否定回答：No, I don't.

例句：—Do you know Jack? 你认识杰克吗？

—Yes, I do. 是的，我认识。

—Do you like apples? 你喜欢（吃）苹果吗？

—No, I don't. 不，我不喜欢。

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. polite 有礼貌的；客气的
2. hard-working 工作努力的；辛勤的
3. helpful 有用的；愿意帮忙的
4. clever 聪明的；聪颖的
5. shy 羞怯的；腼腆的；怕生的

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

二、我要掌握的句型

—What's she like? 她什么样？

—She's kind. 她很友好。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Chen Jie: Hey, Ms Wang will be our new Chinese teacher.	陈洁：嗨，王女士将成为我们的新语文老师。
John: Really? What's she like?	约翰：真的吗？她什么样？
Chen Jie: She's kind.	陈洁：她很友好。
John: Is she strict?	约翰：她要求严格吗？
Chen Jie: Yes, sometimes.	陈洁：是的，有时严格。
John: Do you know her?	约翰：你认识她吗？
Chen Jie: Yes. She's my mother!	陈洁：是的。她是我妈妈！
John: Haha. Cool!	约翰：哈哈。真酷！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Meet Robin!	认识罗宾！
Sept. 1st, Tuesday	9月1日，星期二
I have a robot! His name is Robin. My grandpa made him.	我有一个机器人！他的名字叫罗宾。我爷爷制造了他。
Robin is short but strong. He is really clever He can speak Chinese and English.	罗宾矮但是强壮。他十分聪明。他会讲汉语和英语。
He is hard-working. He is very helpful at home.	他很勤奋。他在家很有用。
He is strict, too. He makes me finish my homework!	他也很严格。他让我完成作业！

考点突破营

1. 询问外貌特征或性格特征的句型

What's... like? 是一个由 what 引导的询问外貌特征或性格特征的固定句型，意为“……长什么样/怎么样？”。what's 是 what is 的缩写形式。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

例句：—What is your maths teacher like? 你的数学老师什么样？

—He's kind and young. 他又友好又年轻。

易错点提示

What's she like? 与 What does she like?

What's she like? 她什么样？	like 在此句是介词，意为“……怎么样”。
What does she like? 她喜欢什么？	like 在此句是动词，意为“喜欢”。

2. 描述外貌特征或性格特征的句型：主语 + be 动词 + 表示外貌特征（或性格特征）的形容词. 此句型用于描述人物的外貌特征或性格特征，也是问句 What's... like? 的答语。注意 be 动词（am, is, are）和主语保持一致。

例句：My grandparents are old. 我的爷爷奶奶年纪大了。

I'm shy. 我很害羞。

You are hard-working. 你很努力。

我是小作家

如何描述人物

一、思维步骤：

1. 立意。本文属于人物描写，我们可以从人物的职业、外貌和性格特征等方面来描写人物，通过具体的事件使人物形象更加鲜明。
2. 复习描述人物外貌及性格特征的词汇，选词→造句→组段→成文。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句：

1. 主题句：I have a/an...
2. 相关单词及短语：funny 滑稽的　young 年轻的　old 年纪大的　tall and thin 又高又瘦　much fun 许多乐趣
3. 结尾句：I like him/her very much. 我非常喜欢他/她。

三、经典范文：

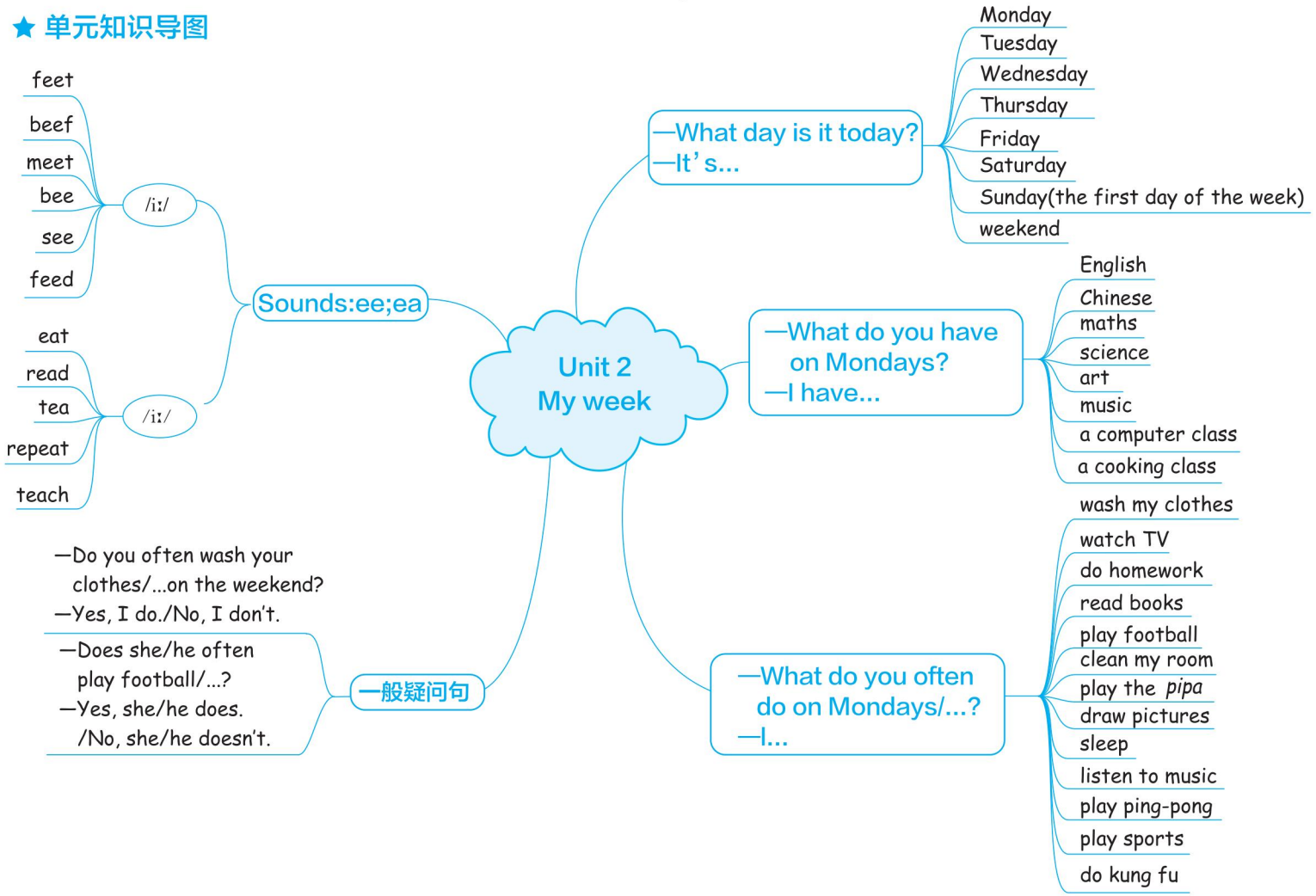
My Chinese teacher

I have a Chinese teacher. He is Mr Black. He is tall and thin. He's young. He's kind, too. He can speak English. He is very clever and funny. In his class, we often play games. His class is so much fun. I like him very much.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 2 My week

★ 单元知识导图



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. Monday 星期一
2. Tuesday 星期二
3. Wednesday 星期三
4. Thursday 星期四
5. Friday 星期五
6. Saturday 星期六
7. Sunday 星期日
8. weekend 周末

归类记忆法：

归类记忆法，是将所记忆内容按不同属性加以归类，然后分门别类记住这些内容及其属性的记忆方法。如：星期单词，它们都是以-day 结尾；它们的首字母都要大写。

二、我要掌握的句型

—What do you have on Thursdays?

在星期四你有什么课？

—I have maths, English and music.

我有数学、英语和音乐课。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
John: Grandpa! Look at my picture.	约翰：爷爷！看我的画。
Grandfather: Great! What do you have on Thursdays?	爷爷：真棒！在星期四你有什么课？
John: I have maths, English and music.	约翰：我有数学、英语和音乐课。
Grandfather: Oh, I love music! Who's your music teacher?	爷爷：哦，我喜爱音乐！谁是你的音乐老师？
John: Mr Young.	约翰：杨老师。
Grandfather: Is he strict?	爷爷：他严格吗？
John: No. He's funny. What do you do on Thursdays, Grandpa?	约翰：不，他很滑稽。在星期四你干什么呀，爷爷？
Grandfather: Oh, I have a cooking class with your grandma!	爷爷：哦，我和你奶奶一起上一堂烹调课！
John: Haha!	约翰：哈哈！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

询问对方在星期几有什么课的句型：What do you have on + 星期单词的复数形式?

答句句型为：I/We + have + 课程 (+ on + 星期单词的复数形式).

例句：—What do you have on Mondays? 在星期一你们有什么课?

—We have maths and English. 我们有数学和英语课。

扫码听读

Part B

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. wash 洗
2. wash my clothes 洗我的衣服
3. watch 看
4. watch TV 看电视
5. do 做；干
6. do homework 做作业
7. read 看；读
8. read books 看书
9. play 踢；玩；参加（体育运动）
10. play football 踢足球

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Do you often read books in this park? 你经常在这个公园里看书吗?

   —No, I don't. 不，不经常。
2. What do you often do on the weekend? 在周末你经常做什么?

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
(It's Saturday afternoon.)	（星期六下午。）
Zhang Peng: Hi, Sarah. What's that?	张鹏：嗨，萨拉。那是什么?
Sarah: It's a storybook.	萨拉：一本故事书。
Zhang Peng: Do you often read books in this park?	张鹏：你经常在这个公园里看书吗?
Sarah: No, I don't. Do you often play football here?	萨拉：不，不经常。你经常在这儿踢足球吗?
Zhang Peng: Yes, I do. I like this park very much.	张鹏：是的，经常。我非常喜欢这个公园。
Sarah: Me too.	萨拉：我也是。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Robin's advice	罗宾的建议
Robin: You look tired. What do you have on Fridays?	罗宾：你看起来很累。在星期五你有什么课?
Wu Yifan: I have PE.	吴一凡：我有体育课。
Robin: Do you often play sports?	罗宾：你经常进行体育运动吗?
Wu Yifan: No, I don't. I don't like sports.	吴一凡：不，不经常。我不喜欢运动。
Robin: What do you often do on the weekend?	罗宾：在周末你经常做什么?
Wu Yifan: I often watch TV. Sometimes I read books.	吴一凡：我经常看电视。有时我看书。

考点突破营

1. 以 do 开头的一般疑问句

   以 do 开头的一般疑问句，用来询问对方是否经常做某事，其句式结构为：Do + 主语 (+ 频率副词) + 动词原形 + 其他?

   它的简略回答有两种，即肯定回答“Yes, 主语 + do.”；

   否定回答“No, 主语 + don't.”。

   例句：—Do you often watch TV in the evening? 你经常在晚上看电视吗?

   —Yes, I do. 是的，我经常看。

2. 询问对方在某一天经常干什么的句型

   询问对方在某一天经常干什么的句型：What do you + often + do + 时间?

   回答：主语 + often + 动词 (短语) + 时间 (时间常省略).

   例句：—What do you often do on Fridays? 你在星期五经常做什么?

   —I often play basketball. 我经常打篮球。

3. read, see, watch 和 look 的用法区别

read 看 (书、报等)	指的是看书或看报，是“阅读”的意思。看文字性材料，其目的是弄清楚其中的意思。	He often reads books in the evening. 他经常在晚上看书。
see 看见，看到	指看到了某人或某物，强调看的结果，意为“看到……”。	I can see a girl under the tree. 我能看见树下有个女孩。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

watch 注视，观看	指集中注意力观看或注视运动中的人或物，常指看电视或比赛。	I often watch the football match. 我经常看足球赛。
look 看，望	指看，投注目光。后接宾语时要加介词 at，强调看的目标。	Please look at the blackboard. 请看黑板。

4. 巧记合成词

合成词是由两个或者两个以上的词合在一起构成的新词。合成词的词义通常能从词的字面看出。例如：

foot（脚，足）+ ball（球）= football（足球）

basket（篮子）+ ball（球）= basketball（篮球）

house（房子）+ work（工作）= housework（家务）

home（家）+ work（工作）= homework（家庭作业）

我是小作家

如何描述周末活动

一、思维步骤：

1. 立意。采用总—分—总的结构，先整体介绍：我叫……，我有一个什么样的周末；然后按时间顺序（由 Saturday 的上午、下午再到 Sunday 的上午、下午）介绍活动；最后总结活动的效果并询问他人的活动。
2. 复习与周末活动有关的英语词汇，选词→造句→组段→成文。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句：

1. 主题句：I have a happy weekend. 我的周末过得很开心。
2. 相关单词及短语：on Saturday morning 在星期六上午　in the afternoon 在下午
   usually 通常　often 经常　sometimes 有时　read books 读书
   do homework 做作业
3. 结尾句：My weekend is good. What about your weekend? 我的周末过得很好。你的周末怎么样？

三、经典范文：

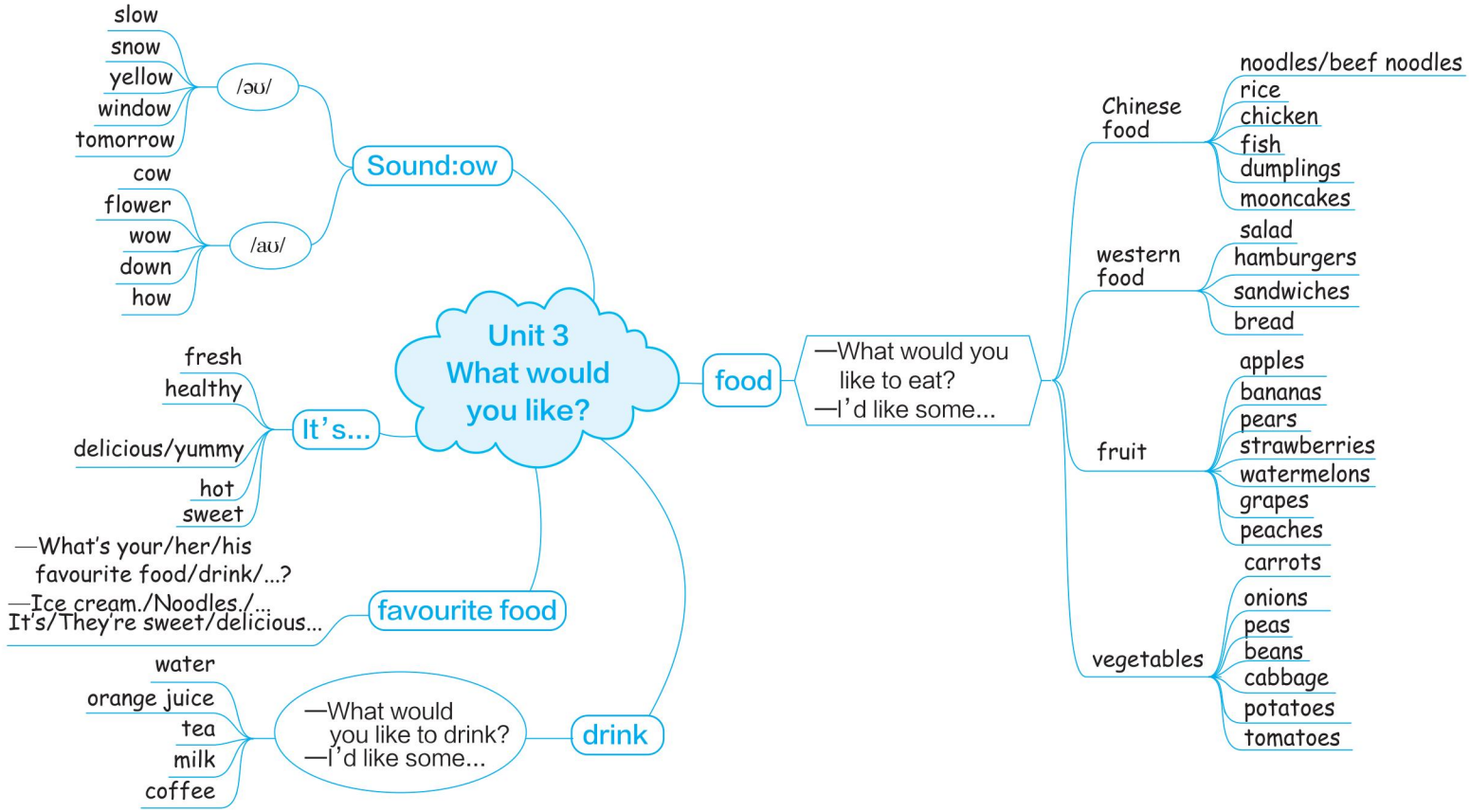
My weekend

Hello, I am Liu Yang. I have a happy weekend. On Saturday morning, I usually do my homework. In the afternoon, I often play football. On Sunday morning I usually read books. In the afternoon, I often play ping-pong. My weekend is good. What about your weekend?

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 3 What would you like?

★ 单元知识导图



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. sandwich 三明治　2. salad 蔬菜沙拉；混合沙拉　3. hamburger 汉堡包
4. ice cream 冰激凌　5. tea 茶；茶水

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —What would you like to eat? 你想吃什么？—A sandwich, please. 请给我一个三明治。
2. —What would you like to drink? 你想喝什么？—I'd like some water. 我想喝点水。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Father: I'm hungry.	爸爸：我饿了。
Mother: What would you like to eat?	妈妈：你想吃什么？
Father: A sandwich, please.	爸爸：请给我一个三明治。
Mother: OK.	妈妈：好的。
Sarah: What would you like to drink?	萨拉：你想喝什么？
Father: I'd like some water. I'm thirsty!	爸爸：我想喝点水。我渴了！
Sarah: Here you are.	萨拉：给你。
Father: Thanks.	爸爸：谢谢。

考点突破营

询问对方想吃什么的句型：What would you like to eat?

该问句的答语要用句型 I'd like + 食物.（我想吃……）或者直接用名词（短语）来回答。I'd like 是 I would like 的缩写形式。

例句：—What would you like to eat? 你想要吃什么？

—I'd like some sandwiches and chicken. 我想要吃些三明治和鸡肉。

或 Some sandwiches and chicken. 一些三明治和鸡肉。

易错点提示 some，any，much 可以修饰不可数名词。不可数名词前不能加冠词 a 或 an，也不能用 many 修饰。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. fresh 新鲜的；刚摘的　2. healthy 健康的　3. delicious 美味的；可口的
4. hot 辣的；辛辣的　5. sweet 含糖的；甜的

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —What's your favourite food? 你最喜欢吃什么食物？—Noodles. 面条。
2. They're delicious. 它们很好吃。
3. Sarah's favourite food is fish. 萨拉最喜爱的食物是鱼。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Sarah: What's your favourite food?	萨拉：你最喜欢吃什么食物？
Zhang Peng: Noodles. I love beef noodles. They're delicious. What's your favourite food?	张鹏：面条。我喜爱牛肉面条。牛肉面条很好吃。你最喜欢吃什么食物？
Sarah: Fish.	萨拉：鱼。
Zhang Peng: Well, let's see. We have beef noodles and fish sandwiches today.	张鹏：嗯，让我们看看。今天我们有牛肉面条和鱼肉三明治。
Sarah: Great!	萨拉：真棒！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Robin will cook today	**罗宾今天要做饭**
Dear Robin, My favourite food is ice cream. It is sweet. I don't like beef but chicken is OK. Onions are my favourite vegetable. I like salad very much. Thank you!	亲爱的罗宾： 我最喜欢的食物是冰激凌。它是甜的。我不喜欢牛肉但是鸡肉还可以。洋葱是我最喜欢的蔬菜。我非常喜欢沙拉。 谢谢你！

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Yifan	一凡
Dear Robin,	亲爱的罗宾：
My favourite food is chicken. It is delicious.	我最喜欢的食物是鸡肉。鸡肉很可口。我
I like vegetables but not carrots.	喜欢蔬菜但是不喜欢胡萝卜。
Thanks.	谢谢。
Grandpa	爷爷

考点突破营

1. 询问对方最喜欢的食物是什么

What's your favourite food? 用来询问对方最喜欢的食物是什么。

what's 是 what is 的缩写形式。

它的答语有：（1）食物名称.（2）My favourite food is + 食物名称.

例句：—What's your favourite food? 你最喜欢的食物是什么？

—My favourite food is rice. 我最喜欢的食物是米饭。

拓展：询问某人最喜欢的……是什么。

句型："What's + 物主代词/名词所有格 + favourite...?" 物主代词有 my/ your/ her/ his/ its/ our/ their 等；名词所有格一般在名词后加"'s"，表示"……的"。

例句：—What's his favourite drink? 他最喜爱的饮料是什么？

—Milk. 牛奶。

—What's Lily's favourite colour? 莉莉最喜爱的颜色是什么？

—Red. 红色。

2. 介绍某人最喜爱的食物/饮料的句型：

物主代词/名词所有格 + favourite food/drink + is + 食物/饮料名称.

例句：My favourite food is beef. 我最喜爱的食物是牛肉。

Mike's favourite drink is orange juice. 迈克最喜欢的饮料是橙汁。

拓展：介绍某人最喜爱的食物/饮料的句型还可以这样表达：食物/饮料名词 + be 动词 + 物主代词/名词所有格 + favourite food/drink.

例句：Carrots are Jack's favourite food. 胡萝卜是杰克最喜爱的食物。

Tea is my favourite drink. 茶是我最喜欢的饮料。

易错点提示 be 动词要根据食物/饮料名词来确定，不可数名词和可数名词单数用 is，可数名词复数用 are。

关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

3. 描述食物特征的句型：食物名词 + be 动词 + 形容词.

例句：The fish is fresh. 鱼很新鲜。These apples are sweet. 这些苹果很甜。

易错点提示 be 动词要根据食物的名称用相应的形式。

智慧屋

可数名词变复数的规则

可数名词变复数，一般词后加“-s”；以“s, x, ch, sh”结尾的词，变复数形式时加“-es”；以“元音字母 + y”结尾的词直接加“-s”；以“辅音字母 + y”结尾的词，“y”变“i”，加“-es”；以“f”和“fe”结尾的词，变“f”“fe”为“v”，再加“-es”。

英美文化角

Salad (色拉)

Salad“色拉”是音译词，又作“沙拉”。它一般是由绿色有叶生菜制成的一道菜，常加有萝卜、黄瓜或西红柿，并加调味品食用。随着制作原料的日益扩大和制作方法的家庭化，色拉品种越来越多。新鲜的生菜、水煮的蔬菜、肉类，还有水果，都可以成为色拉的主料。它制作简单，视觉效果奇特，味道不错，深受人们喜爱。

我是小作家

如何描述人们最喜爱的食物

一、思维步骤：

1. 立意。我们可以先介绍人物，然后介绍人物最喜爱的食物，接着介绍最喜爱该食物的原因。
2. 复习关于食物的词汇及描述食物的形容词，选词→造句→组段→成文。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句：

1. 相关句型：...favourite food is ...；...is/are...favourite food. It's/They're...
2. 相关单词：tomato 西红柿　carrot 胡萝卜　beef 牛肉　milk 牛奶　fresh 新鲜的　healthy 健康的　delicious 美味的

三、经典范文：

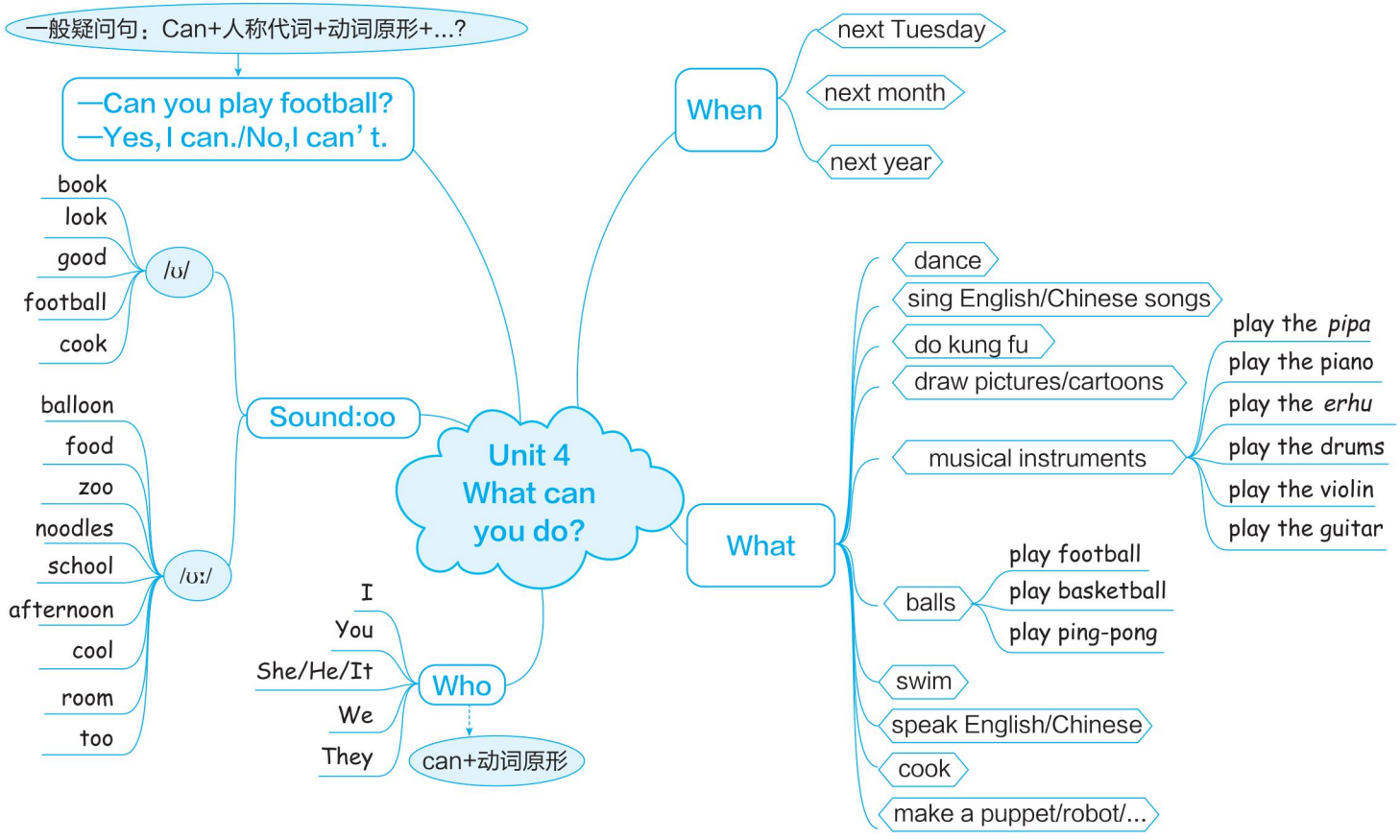
Our favourite food

There are four people in my family. They are my parents, my sister and me. My father's favourite food is beef. It's delicious. Tomatoes are my mother's favourite food. They are fresh. My sister's favourite food is ice cream. It's sweet. I like carrots very much. They are healthy.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 4 What can you do?

★ 单元知识导图



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多习资料

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. sing 唱歌
2. song 歌曲
3. sing English songs 唱英文歌曲
4. play the *pipa* 弹琵琶
5. kung fu 功夫
6. do kung fu 练武术
7. dance 跳舞
8. draw 画
9. cartoon 漫画
10. draw cartoons 画漫画

二、我要掌握的句型

1. What can you do for the party, children? 孩子们，你们能为派对做什么？
2. I can sing English songs. 我会唱英文歌曲。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Miss White: We'll have an English party next Tuesday! What can you do for the party, children?	怀特小姐：下个星期二我们将举行一个英语派对。孩子们，你们能为派对做些什么？
Zhang Peng: I can sing English songs.	张鹏：我会唱英文歌曲。
Miss White: Wonderful! How about you, John?	怀特小姐：太好了！你呢，约翰？
John: I can do some kung fu!	约翰：我会练一些武术！
Miss White: Thank you, John.	怀特小姐：谢谢你，约翰。

考点突破营

1. 询问某人会干什么的句型：What can + 主语 + do?
   答语为：主语 + can + 动词原形 + 其他.
   例句：—What can the boy do? 这个男孩会做什么？
   —He can clean the bedroom. 他会打扫卧室。
2. 介绍某人能做什么的句型：主语 + can + 动词原形 + 其他. 这是一个陈述句，可以单独用来介绍某人能做什么，也可以作为 What can … do? 的答语。
   例句：She can play ping-pong. 她会打乒乓球。
   I can wash my clothes. 我会洗我的衣服。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

易错点提示 can 后面跟动词原形。

文化长廊

功夫（kung fu）

功夫（kung fu）又称中国功夫、中国传统武术。功夫，是中华民族智慧的结晶，是中华传统文化的体现，是世界上独一无二的“武文化”。

中国功夫讲究刚柔并济，内外兼修，既有刚健雄美的外形，又有典雅深邃的内涵，蕴含着先哲们对生命和宇宙的参悟，是中国的宝贵文化遗产。

中国功夫在世界上影响广泛。大量中外影视作品都选取了中国功夫这一题材，少林功夫、太极拳、咏春拳等中国功夫也在全球广泛传播。

Part B

考点直通车

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. cook 烹调；烹饪　2. swim 游泳　3. play basketball 打篮球
4. ping-pong 乒乓球　5. play ping-pong 打乒乓球　6. speak English 说英语

扫码听读

易错点提示 play 后接球类名词，球类名词前不加冠词。

二、我要掌握的句型

1. —Can you do any kung fu? 你会练武术吗？
   —Yes, I can. / No, I can't. 是的，我会。/不，我不会。
2. I can't play the *pipa*. 我不会弹琵琶。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Mr Ma: Good afternoon, children. Today we'll learn some kung fu.	马先生：下午好，孩子们。今天我们将学习武术。
Children: Cool!	孩子们：太酷了！
Mr Ma: Can you do any kung fu, John?	马先生：约翰，你会练武术吗？
John: Yes, I can.	约翰：是的，我会。
Mr Ma: Wonderful!	马先生：了不起！
Mr Ma: Can you do any kung fu, Oliver?	马先生：奥利弗，你会练武术吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Oliver: No, I can't.	**奥利弗**：不，我不会。
Mr Ma: No problem. I can help you.	**马先生**：不要紧。我能帮助你。

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Who can be my friend?	**谁能成为我的朋友？**
Do you want a new friend? Try me! I am Robin the Robot! I am friendly and funny. I can speak English and Chinese. I can do some kung fu. I can play ping-pong, but I can't swim. What can you do? Please send me an email at robin@urfriend. cn. Robin	你想要一位新朋友吗？试一试我！我是机器人罗宾！我既友好又有趣。我能说英语和汉语。我能练武术。我能打乒乓球，但是我不能游泳。 你能干什么？请给我发送电子邮件到：robin@urfriend. cn。 罗宾

考点突破营

1. 询问对方是否会做某事的句型：Can + 主语 + 动词原形 + 其他? 这是一个由情态动词 can 引导的一般疑问句，用来询问某人是否会做某事。
   肯定回答是：Yes, 人称代词（主格）+ can. (是的，……会。)
   否定回答是：No, 人称代词（主格）+ can't. (不，……不会。)
   例句：—Can you wash clothes? 你会洗衣服吗？—Yes, I can. 是的，我会。
   —Can you make the puppet? 你会制作木偶吗？—No, I can't. 不，我不会。
2. can 构成的否定句型：主语 + can't + 动词原形 + 其他. 这是一个含有情态动词 can 的否定句。其中 can't 是 cannot 的缩写，表示“不能，不会”。
   例句：I can't cook. 我不会烹饪。
3. some 和 any

单词	用法	示例
some 一些	some 后面既可以接可数名词，也可以接不可数名词。常用在肯定句中。	They have some new crayons. 他们有一些新蜡笔。
any 任何的；任一的	any 后面既可以接可数名词，也可以接不可数名词。常用在否定句和疑问句中。	They don't have any new crayons. 他们没有新蜡笔。 Do they have any new crayons? 他们有新蜡笔吗？

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

文化长廊

乒乓球（ping-pong）的由来

1890年，几位驻守印度（India）的英国海军军官偶然发现在一张不大的台子上玩网球颇为刺激。后来他们改用空心球代替弹性不大的实心球，并用木板代替了网拍，在桌子上进行这种新颖的“网球赛”，这种运动被称为table tennis。

table tennis出现不久，便成了一种很受欢迎的运动。20世纪初，美国开始成套地生产乒乓球的比赛用具。最初，table tennis有其他的名称，如indoor tennis。后来，美国制造商以乒乓球撞击时所发出的声音创造出ping-pong这个新词，作为他制造的“乒乓球”的专利注册商标。ping-pong后来成了table tennis的另一个正式名称。当它传到中国后，人们又创造出“乒乓球”这个新的词语。

我是小作家

如何介绍自己会做什么，不会做什么

一、思维步骤：

1. 构思。首先，把自己能做的事情罗列出来。其次，把自己不能做的事情罗列出来。
2. 复习与此话题相关的动词及动词短语，选词→造句→组段→成文。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句：

1. 主题句：I can... I can't...
2. 相关单词及短语：sing 唱歌　dance 跳舞　draw pictures 画画　do kung fu 练武术
   play the *pipa* 弹琵琶　sing English songs 唱英文歌曲
   draw cartoons 画漫画　swim 游泳　speak English 说英语
   cook 烹调；烹饪　play football 踢足球　play ping-pong 打乒乓球
   play basketball 打篮球

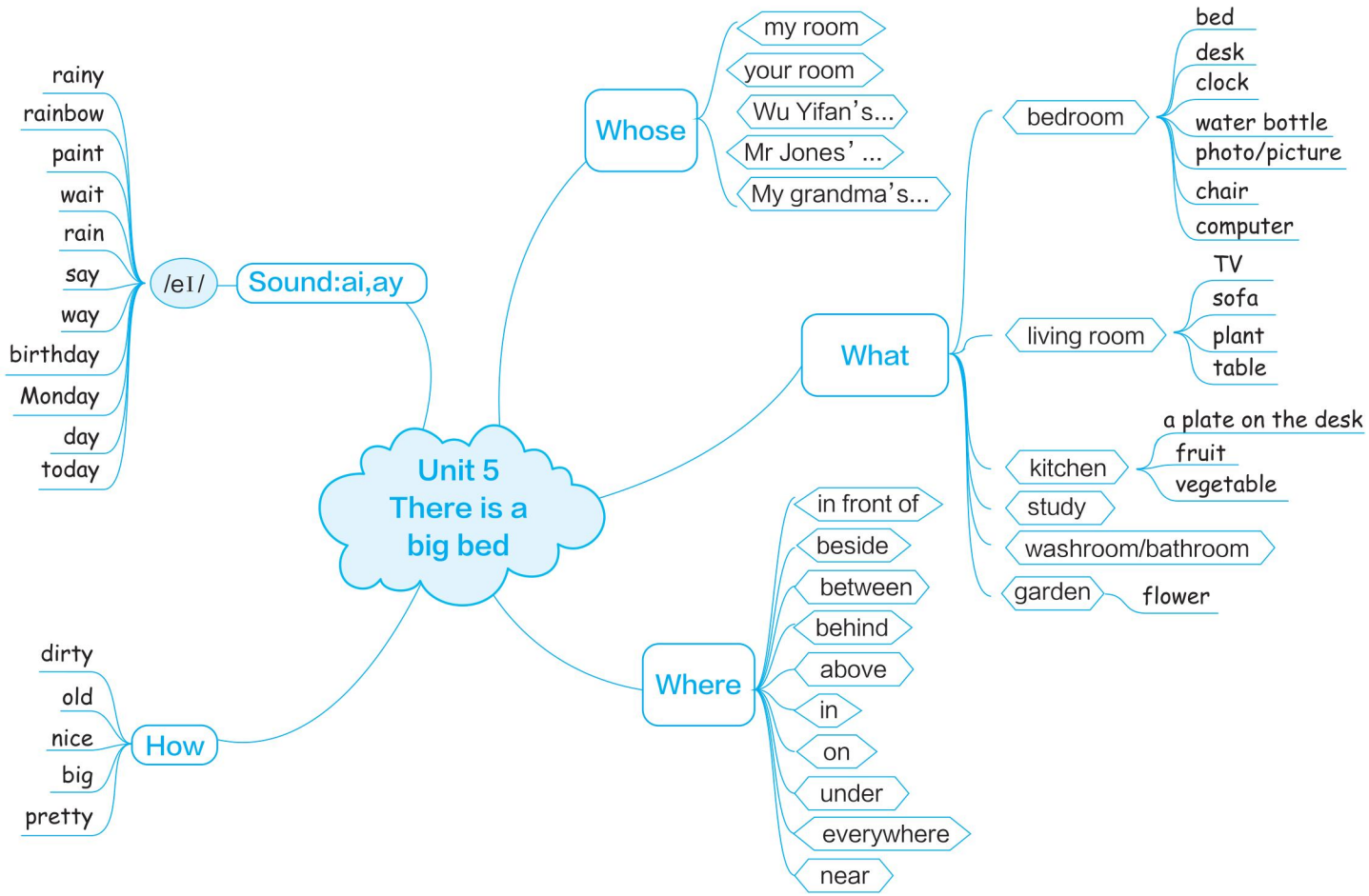
三、经典范文：

I'm May. I'm eleven years old. I can sing and dance. I can swim. I can speak English. I can play basketball and football. I can't cook. I can't sing English songs. I can't play ping-pong. I can't play the *pipa* .

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 5 There is a big bed

★ 单元知识导图



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. clock 时钟
2. plant 植物
3. bottle 瓶子
4. water bottle 水瓶
5. bike 自行车
6. photo 照片

比较记忆法：

photo 的复数形式是 photos，加-s；tomato 的复数形式是 tomatoes，加-es；potato 的复数形式是 potatoes，加-es。

二、我要掌握的句型

There is a big bed. 有一张大床。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Sarah：Your room is really nice!	萨拉：你的房间真漂亮！
Zhang Peng：Thanks.	张鹏：谢谢。
Mike：There is a big bed.	迈克：有一张大床。
Zhang Peng：Yes. I like my bed.	张鹏：是的。我喜欢我的床。
Mike：There is a nice photo, too.	迈克：还有一张漂亮的照片。
Sarah：Wow! You look cool!	萨拉：哇！你看起来真酷！
Zhang Peng：Thank you. Hey, my computer is here on the desk. Let's play!	张鹏：谢谢你。嘿，我的电脑在这边的桌子上。让我们一起玩吧！

考点突破营

表达“某处有某物”（单数）的句型：There is a/an + 可数名词单数 + 介词短语.

例句：There is an apple on the plate. 盘子上有一个苹果。

There is a book in my schoolbag. 我书包里有一本书。

拓展：There is 结构后面也可以接不可数名词表示“有某物”，不可数名词前常加 some。

例句：There is some bread on the plate. 盘子上有一些面包。

There is some water in the bottle. 瓶子里有一些水。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part B

考点直通车


扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. front 正面　2. in front of 在……前面　3. between 在……中间
4. above 在（或向）……上面　5. beside 在旁边（附近）　6. behind 在（或向）…… 后面

加法记忆法：

be (在) + side (面、边) = beside (在……旁边);

be (在) + hind (后面的) = behind (在……后面)

二、我要掌握的句型

1. There are so many pictures here. 这儿有这么多图画。
2. My grandparents have a garden in front of their house.
我的祖父母在他们的房子前面有一个花园。

翻译达人秀


课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Zhang Peng: This is the living room.	张鹏：这是起居室。
Mike: Wow! There are so many pictures here.	迈克：哇！这儿有这么多图画。
Zhang Peng: Yes. My father can draw very well.	张鹏：是的。我爸爸可以画得非常好。
Sarah: There are so many plants here, too.	萨拉：这儿也有这么多的植物。
Zhang Peng: They're my grandmother's plants. My grandparents have a garden in front of their house. There are lots of flowers in it.	张鹏：它们是我祖母的植物。我的祖父母在他们的房子前面有一个花园。花园里有许多花。
Sarah: Cool!	萨拉：真酷！

Read and write

原 文	译 文
An email to Robin	一封给罗宾的电子邮件
To: robin@urfriend. cn	给：*robin@ urfriend. cn*

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

From: jones@art. cn

Dec. 20th

Dear Robin,

I am Yifan's art teacher. I just moved into an old house. The rooms are dirty. There are pencils and crayons on the floor. There are pictures and photos everywhere. Oh, no! I see a mouse behind my computer!

Please help me. I live near the nature park. Please hurry!

Mr Jones

来自于：*jones@ art. cn*

12 月 20 日

亲爱的罗宾：

我是一凡的美术老师。我刚刚搬进了一所老房子。房间是脏的。地板上有铅笔和蜡笔。到处都是图画和照片。噢，不！我看到了一只老鼠在我的电脑后面！

请帮帮我。我住在自然公园附近。请快点！

琼斯先生

考点突破营

1. 表达“某处有某物”（复数）的句型：There are + some/many… + 名词的复数形式 + 介词短语.

例句：There are some apples on the plate. 盘子上有一些苹果。

There are a lot of books on the bookshelf. 书架上有许多书。

拓展：there be 结构的就近原则

若 there be 后是两个或多个并列的名词，be 则与离得最近的那个名词的单复数一致。即：紧挨着它的名词是单数或不可数名词就用 is，紧挨着它的名词是复数就用 are。

例句：There is a ruler, a book and two pencils on the desk.

课桌上有一把尺子、一本书和两支铅笔。

There are two pencils, a ruler and a book on the desk.

课桌上有两支铅笔、一把尺子和一本书。

2. 表达“某人拥有某物”的句型：主语 + have/has + 某物.

例句：I have a new bike. 我有一辆新自行车。

拓展：there be 结构与 have/has 的区别

there be 表示“存在”某人或某物，而 have/has 表示主语“拥有”某人或某物，作宾语的某人或某物归主语所有。

例句：There are some children in the garden. 花园里有几个孩子。

I have a bike. 我有一辆自行车。(自行车是属于我的)

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

3. 易错点辨析：

（1）many, much, a lot of 和 lots of 都有“许多”的意思，但它们的用法不同。

用法	例句
many 和可数名词的复数形式连用。	I don't have many books. 我没有很多书。
much 和不可数名词连用。	There is much water in the bottle. 瓶子里有许多水。
a lot of = lots of 后接可数名词的复数形式和不可数名词均可，多用于肯定句。	There are lots of/a lot of pictures. 有许多图画。

（2）on 和 above

单词	用法	例句
on 在……上面	强调两物接触。	The picture is on the wall. 图画在墙上。
above 在……之上	表示位置高于某人或某物，但不一定是正上方。	There is a kite above John. 有一个风筝在约翰的上面。

我是小作家

如何介绍房间陈设

一、思维步骤：

1. 构思。首先想一想房间里有哪些物品？其次想一想它们在哪儿？最后总结一下：我喜欢我的房间。
2. 复习房间中物品的词汇以及表达这些物品位置的介词（短语），选词→造句→组段→成文。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句：

1. 相关句型：This is... There is... There are... 物品 + is/are + 介词短语.
2. 相关单词及短语：clock 时钟；钟　plant 植物　bottle 瓶子　bike 自行车；脚踏车
   photo 照片；相片　water bottle 水瓶　desk 课桌　chair 椅子　picture 图画；照片
   bed 床　schoolbag 书包　between 在……中间　above 在（或向）……上面
   beside 在旁边（附近）　behind 在（或向）……后面　in front of 在……前面
3. 结尾句：I like my room very much. 我非常喜欢我的房间。

三、经典范文：

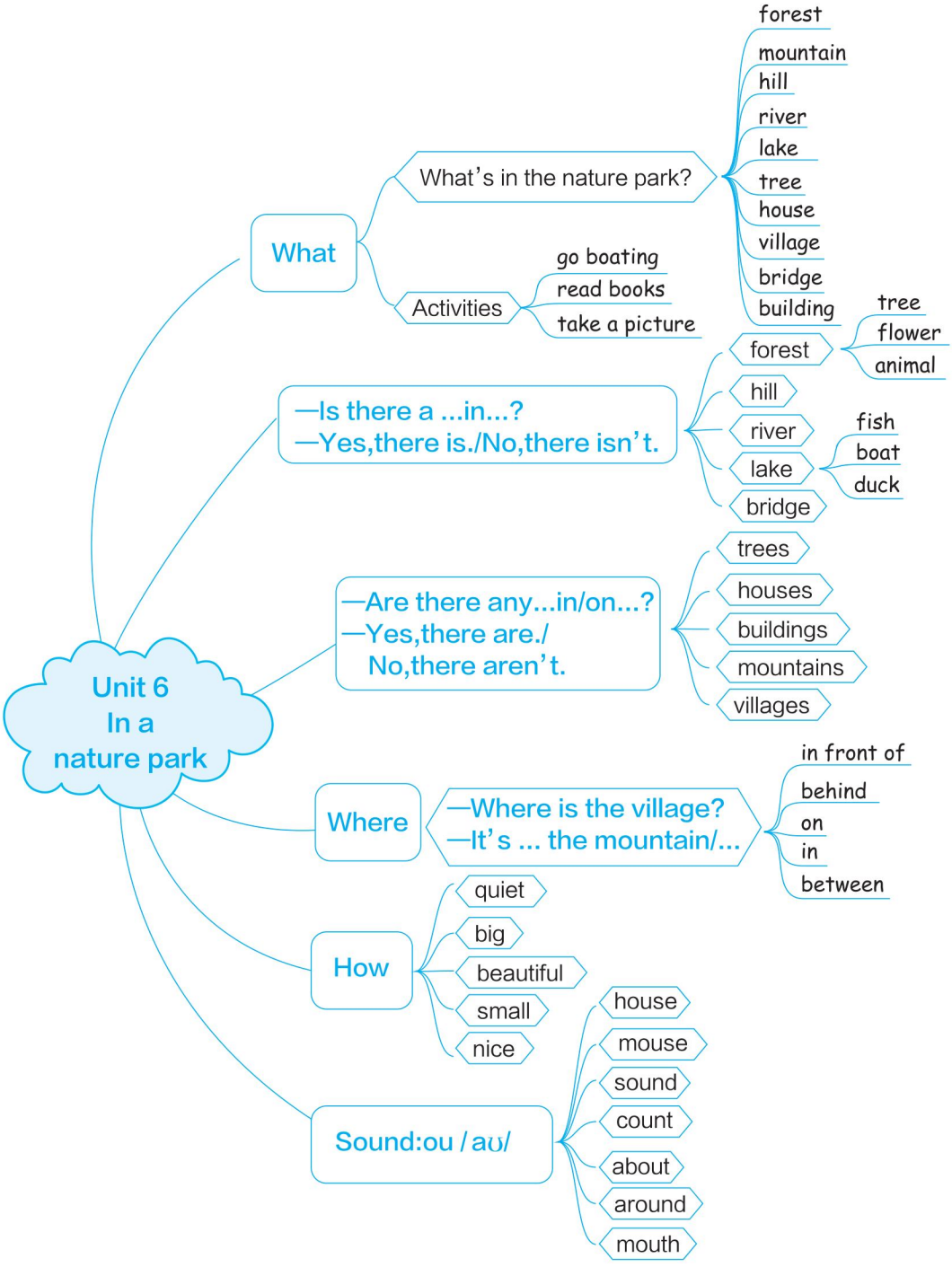
My room

I'm John. This is my new room. There is a big bed in my room. The photo of my family is near the bed. There is a beautiful picture on the wall. There are many mountains and white clouds in the picture. Two chairs are in front of the desk. A computer is on the desk. Look at my shoes. They are under the bed. I clean my room every day. I like my room very much.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Unit 6 In a nature park

★ 单元知识导图



关注微信公众号"教辅资料站"获取更多学习资料

Part A

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. forest 森林　　2. river 河；江　　3. lake 湖泊
4. mountain 高山　　5. hill 小山

二、我要掌握的句型

—Is there a river in the forest, Miss White? 怀特小姐，森林里有一条河吗？

—Yes, there is. /No, there isn't. 是的，有。/不，没有。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Miss White: Children, let's go to the forest!	怀特小姐：孩子们，让我们去森林吧！
Children: Yeah!	孩子们：耶！
Zhang Peng: Is there a river in the forest, Miss White?	张鹏：怀特小姐，森林里有一条河吗？
Miss White: No, there isn't.	怀特小姐：不，没有。
Zhang Peng: Is there a lake, Miss White?	张鹏：怀特小姐，有湖吗？
Miss White: Yes, there is and there are some small boats.	怀特小姐：是的，有并且有一些小船。
Zhang Peng: Cool! Let's go boating.	张鹏：酷！让我们去划船吧。

考点突破营

There is 句型的一般疑问句及回答

句型结构为：Is there + 可数名词单数或不可数名词 + 地点? 表达“某处有……吗?”

肯定回答是：Yes, there is. 否定回答是：No, there isn't.

例句：—Is there a water bottle on the table? 桌子上有一个水瓶吗？

—Yes, there is. 是的，有。

—Is there a river near your home? 你家附近有一条河吗？

—No, there isn't. 不，没有。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

Part B

考点直通车

扫码听读

一、我要掌握的词汇

1. tree 树　　2. bridge 桥　　3. building 建筑物；楼房
4. village 村庄　　5. house 房屋；房子

二、我要掌握的句型

1. There aren't many people. 没有很多人。
2. —Are there any tall buildings in the nature park? 自然公园里有一些高的建筑物吗？
   —Yes, there are. /No, there aren't. 是的，有。/不，没有。

翻译达人秀

课文朗读

Let's talk

原 文	译 文
Zhang Peng: The nature park is so quiet!	张鹏：这个自然公园这么安静！
Miss White: Yes, Zhang Peng. There aren't many people.	怀特小姐：是的，张鹏。没有很多人。
Zhang Peng: Are there any tall buildings in the nature park?	张鹏：自然公园里有一些高的建筑物吗？
Miss White: No, there aren't.	怀特小姐：不，没有。
Zhang Peng: Are there any animals?	张鹏：有一些动物吗？
Miss White: Yes, there are. There are ducks and rabbits.	怀特小姐：是的，有。有鸭子和兔子。

Read and write

原 文	译 文
Robin draws	**罗宾画画**
Robin is at Mr Jones' house. There is a nature park near the house. In the park there is a high mountain. In front of the mountain there is a small village. There is a lake near the village. There are many ducks on the lake.	罗宾在琼斯先生的房子里。在这房子附近有一个自然公园。公园里有一座高山。在这座山前面有一个小村庄。村庄附近有一个湖。湖里有许多鸭子。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

考点突破营

1. there be 句型的否定句：There be + not + 主语 + 地点. there be 句型的否定句要在 be 动词后面加 not，表示“某地没有某物”。

   例句：There isn't a photo in the room. 房间里没有照片。

   There aren't any birds in the tree. 树上没有鸟。

2. there are 句型的一般疑问句

   there are 句型的一般疑问句询问某地是否有某物，某物指的是可数名词的复数形式。它的句型结构是：Are there (+ any) + 可数名词的复数形式 + 地点?

   肯定回答是：Yes, there are. 否定回答是：No, there aren't.

   例句：—Are there any ducks on the river? 河里有鸭子吗?

   —Yes, there are. 是的，有。

   易错点提示 there be 句型的肯定句变否定句和疑问句时，句中的 some 要改成 any。

智慧屋

there be 结构用法顺口溜

there be 结构是倒装，主语位于 be 后方。主语为单数不可数，there is 结构别含糊。主语如果是复数，there are 结构没错误。多个主语同相处，be 和近邻最和睦。变否定特简单，not 添在 be 后面。变疑问也不难，把 be 提到 there 前。肯定句用 some，否定疑问要用 any 来替换。

英语习语

Water under the bridge

A: I can't believe I forgot your birthday. I am such a bad friend!	A: 我不敢相信我居然忘记了你的生日。我真是个不称职的朋友！
B: Never mind. It's water under the bridge.	B: 没关系。都已经过去了。
A: I promise I won't forget it again. Next year I'll be sure to get you something extra nice!	A: 我保证我再也不会忘了。明年我一定会给你准备特别好的礼物！

人们用“water under the bridge”这个短语来表示事情已经发生，无法改变。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

我是小作家

如何介绍景物

一、思维步骤：

1. 构思。本文属于景物描写，我们可以先整体介绍，然后用 there be 句型介绍房子、河、桥、小船等景物，最后进行总体评价。
2. 复习与景物相关的词汇及表达位置的介词（短语），选词→造句→组段→成文。
3. 通读检查。

二、精彩词句：

1. 相关句型：There is... There are...
2. 相关单词及短语：village 村庄；村镇　park 公园　forest 森林　river 河；江
   lake 湖；湖泊　in 在……里面　on 在……上面
   near 在……附近　in front of 在……前面
3. 结尾句：I like it very much. 我非常喜欢它。

三、经典范文：

My village

I'm Li Ming. My village is very beautiful. There are many mountains near my village. There is a forest in front of the mountains. It's near my village. There are many big trees in the forest. Two bridges are over the river. The river is near my house. Look! There are many ducks and boats on the river. There are many fish in the river. I love my village very much.

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

荣德基品质教辅推荐

同步讲解



《点拨》助力家校联动，畅享方法学习

——家庭学习的必备手册

课前高效预习 导知目标、导读教材、导学基础、导问疑惑。
—— 提供读者全环节高效的预习指南

课后巩固复习 批注重难、研学方法、精析典例、解答疑惑。
—— 提供读者全方位批注式复习学案

期末复习备考 总结必记、归纳考点、整合专题，详解考题。
—— 提供读者全维度期末速提分策略

同步阅读



《魔卡阅读》让阅读和您的教学分秒同步

——素养阅读的导学案

同步阅读 与教材单元同步、与精读课文同步、与主题要素同步。
—— 与您教学分秒同步

方法阅读 教授方法、示例方法、批注方法、练透方法、沉淀方法。
—— 方法系统学习学案

批注阅读 好词好句批注、语文要素批注、质疑反思批注，立德树人批注。
—— 批注式教学好教案

同步口算



《星级口算天天练》口算选黄皮儿，豆点陪伴你！

口碑爆棚：黄皮儿带豆点的《星级口算天天练》！
课时好用：课时同步教学，新授、复习、易错环环相扣！
口算专业：常规算、变式算、应用算，三位一体算得倍儿爽！
检查方便：拍照即可判对错，老师家长都叫好！

同步测试



《好卷》大卷同步达标，小卷期末领先

卷卷好 跟踪国家教改方向，聚焦最新命题趋势。
测单元 夯实基础，才是硬道理。
抓专项 突破重点，习得好方法。
理考点 梳理考点，全面不遗漏。
冲期末 演练真题，考出好成绩。



关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料

封面设计：典点瑞泰



扫码进群，直达免费配套资源
专属课件包，海量资源库

荣德基官方网站：
http://www.rudder.com.cn
荣德基天猫旗舰店：
http://rongdeji.tmall.com
客服热线：182 1039 5892

荣德基小学频道
获取最新教育资讯

登录荣德基官网
免费下载听力

本书导学号
7217133

本书为赠品
与本书配套的学生用书(已出版)定价为37.90元。

关注微信公众号“教辅资料站”获取更多学习资料